

# ESSENCE OF ENGLISH FOR UPPER CLASS

A practice book and self-study reference with English and Chinese explanations  
suitable for use with the latest Medium of Instruction policy (MOI)

根據最新英文科綱要編寫，配合微調中學教學語言安排方案  
每單元均附有簡易之中英文定義、用法和實用例句  
高小、初中中文班、英文班及自修生最佳補充教材  
設有索引，方便快速搜查

WITH ANSWERS

附答案

精編英文科 複習指導

REVISED EDITION 修訂版



## FEATURES

- ◆ The contents of this book (EOE) are based on the latest Primary and Secondary Syllabuses and are suitable for students preparing for the Hong Kong Attainment Test, Pre-secondary 1 (PS1), the Territory-wide System Assessment (TSA) and also copes with the Medium of Instruction (MOI) for secondary schools.
- ◆ Materials are written with current everyday English. Learning chapters are arranged step by step such that students can learn systematically.
- ◆ Concise grammatical concepts, simple language structures and interesting illustrations can successfully arouse student's interest to learn and improve their language skills.
- ◆ To enhance students' understanding and facilitate independent learning, Chinese definitions of difficult vocabulary, usage and practical examples with daily life contexts are given.
- ◆ This book (EOE) is most suitable for upper primary students, Chinese and English junior secondary students and self learning students.
- ◆ Complimentary Teacher's Book is available with model answers printed in red. In student's book, answers are provided at the last section of the book for students to self check answers.

### 特色

- ◆ 本書範圍根據最新英文科課程綱要編寫，適合「中一入學前測驗」、「全港性系統評估」課程和新推行之「微調中學教學語言安排」。
- ◆ 題材生活環境化，時代感豐富；學習單元由淺入深，簡明易學。  
淺易的文法概念和有趣的插圖，學生可從趣味中輕鬆地學習英語語法。
- ◆ 每單元之定義和用法均以淺易中，英文對譯，學生易於吸收；大量實用例句，方便學生先模仿後創作。
- ◆ 本複習指導適合高小生，初中中文班、英文班學生和自修生採用。
- ◆ [教師用書] 詳細正確，用紅墨精印，方便老師參考。學生書後設有詳細答案，方便學生自行核對。

### 編者的話

- ◆ This book (EOE) was written by a well experienced English teacher in Hong Kong and edited by our editorial staff. Should there be any errors, we sincerely welcome your comments.
- ◆ 本複習指導由香港資深老師主編及經本社編輯部嚴謹校對，力求完美。仍恐有錯漏之處，祈望各位老師不吝指正。

# ESSENCE OF ENGLISH FOR UPPER CLASS

## 精編英文科複習指導

CHAPTER (單元)	PAGE (頁數)
FEATURE	i
CONTENTS	ii — iv
INDEX	v — vii
1 PARTS OF SPEECH ( 詞類 )	1—3
2 PHRASES AND CLAUSES ( 片語和子句 )	4
3 SENTENCES ( 句子 )	5—6
4 NOUNS ( 名詞 )	7—23
A. The Kinds of Nouns ( 名詞的種類 )	
1. Common Noun ( 普通名詞 )	
2. Proper Noun ( 專有名詞 )	
3. Collective Noun ( 集合名詞 )	
4. Material Noun ( 物質名詞 )	
5. Abstract Noun ( 抽象名詞 )	
B. Singular Nouns and Plural Nouns ( 單數和雙數 )	
C. Countable Nouns and Uncountable Nouns ( 可數名詞和不可數名詞 )	
D. Gender ( 性別 )	
1. Masculine Gender ( 陽性 )	
2. Feminine Gender ( 陰性 )	
3. Common Gender ( 通性 )	
4. Neuter Gender ( 中性 )	
E. Possessive Nouns ( 物主名詞 )	
1. Apostrophe ( ' )	
2. Apostrophe s ( 's )	
3. of the	
5 PRONOUNS ( 代名詞/代詞 )	24—34
A. Personal Pronoun ( 人稱代名詞 )	
B. Possessive Pronoun ( 物主代名詞 )	
C. Reflexive Pronoun ( 反身代名詞 )	
D. Emphasizing Pronoun ( 加強語氣代名詞 )	
E. Demonstrative Pronoun ( 指示代名詞 )	
F. Interrogative Pronoun ( 疑問代名詞 )	
G. Relative Pronoun ( 關係代名詞 )	
H. Indefinite Pronoun ( 不定代名詞 )	
6 ARTICLES ( 冠詞 )	35—40
A. Indefinite Article — “a”, “an” ( 不定冠詞 )	
B. Definite Article — “the” ( 固定冠詞 )	
7 ADJECTIVES ( 形容詞 )	41—49
A. The Kinds of Adjectives ( 形容詞的種類 )	
1. Adjective of Quality ( 物質形容詞 )	
2. Adjective of Quantity ( 數量形容詞 )	
3. Adjective of Number ( 數目形容詞 )	
4. Demonstrative Adjective ( 指示形容詞 )	
5. Possessive Adjective ( 物主形容詞 )	
6. Interrogative Adjective ( 疑問形容詞 )	
B. Comparison of Adjective ( 形容詞的程度比較 )	

C. Formation of Comparative Degree and Superlative Degree of Adjectives  
('比較級' 和 '最高級' 形容詞的形成)

8 VERBS (動詞) ————— 50—63

- A. The Parts of Verbs (動詞的部分)
  - 1. Present Tense (現在式時態)
  - 2. Present Participle (現在分詞)
  - 3. Past Tense (過去式時態)
  - 4. Past Participle (過去分詞)
- B. The Kinds of Verbs (動詞的種類)
  - 1. Transitive Verb (及物動詞)
  - 2. Intransitive Verb (不及物動詞)
  - 3. Auxiliary Verb (助動詞)

9 THE TENSES OF VERBS (動詞的時態) ————— 64—70

- A. The Parts of Tenses (時態的部分)
  - 1. Present Tense (現在式時態)
  - 2. Past Tense (過去式時態)
  - 3. Future Tense (未來式時態)
- B. The Uses of Tenses (時態的用法):
  - 1. Simple Present Tense (簡單現在式時態)
  - 2. Present Continuous Tense (現在進行式時態)
  - 3. Present Perfect Tense (現在完成式時態)
  - 4. Simple Past Tense (簡單過去式時態)
  - 5. Past Continuous Tense (過去進行式時態)
  - 6. Past Perfect Tense (過去完成式時態)
  - 7. Simple Future Tense (簡單未來式時態)
  - 8. Future Continuous Tense (未來進行式時態)
  - 9. Future Perfect Tense (未來完成式時態)

10 ADVERBS (副詞) ————— 71—83

- A. The Kinds of Adverbs (副詞的種類)
  - 1. Adverb of Time (時間副詞)
  - 2. Adverb of Place (地方副詞)
  - 3. Adverb of Frequency (次數副詞)
  - 4. Adverb of Manner (態度副詞)
  - 5. Adverb of Degree (程度副詞)
  - 6. Interrogative Adverb (疑問副詞)
  - 7. Adverb of Negation or Affirmation (否定或肯定副詞)
- B. Formation of Adverbs (副詞的形成)
- C. Comparison of Adverbs (副詞的程度比較)
- D. Position of Adverbs (副詞的位置)

11 PREPOSITIONS (前置詞/介詞) ————— 84—97

- A. Prepositions of Time (表示時間的前置詞)
- B. Prepositions of Place (表示地方的前置詞)
- C. Some words used together with prepositions (常和一些字用在一起的前置詞)
- D. Prepositional phrases with particular prepositions (前置詞片語)

12 CONJUNCTIONS (連接詞) ————— 98—104

- A. The Uses of Some Common Conjunctions (常用連接詞的用法)
- B. The Uses of Some Compound Conjunctions (複合連接詞的用法)

13 INTERJECTIONS (感歎詞) ————— 105

<b>14 AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES</b> (肯定句, 否定句和疑問句)	106—112	
A. The Forms of Affirmative, Negative and Interrogative sentences (肯定句, 否定句和疑問句的形式)		
B. The Changes of Affirmative into Negative (肯定句轉為否定句)		
C. The Changes of a Sentence into Interrogative (普通句轉為疑問句)		
<b>15 CLOSE-ENDED AND OPEN-ENDED QUESTIONS</b> (封閉式疑問句和開放式疑問句)	113—118	
<b>16 QUESTION TAGS</b> (附加疑問句)	119—121	
<b>17 DIRECT SPEECH AND INDIRECT SPEECH</b> (直接引語和間接引語)	122—134	
A. Statements (敘述語)		
B. Questions (疑問語)		
C. Commands and Requests (命令和請求)		
D. Exclamations and Wishes (驚歎和願望)		
<b>18 ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE</b> (主動語態和被動語態)	135—148	
A. The Ways to form the Passive voice (轉為被動語態的方法)		
B. Forming the Passive Voice in Different Tenses (轉為被動語態時, 不同動詞的改變方法)		
<b>19 FORMATION OF WORDS</b> (字的形成)	149—156	
<b>20 SYONYMS AND ANTONYMS</b> (近義字和反義字)	157—163	
<b>21 PUNCTUATIONS</b> (標點)	164—172	
Capital Letter (大寫字母)	Colon (冒號)	Apostrophe (省略號)
Full Stop (句號)	Semi-colon (分號)	Quotation Marks (引號)
Comma (逗號)	Exclamation Mark (感歎號)	Dash (破折號)
Question Mark (問號)	Hyphen (連字號)	
<b>22 ONE WORD FOR MANY</b> (單字代替釋義)	173—180	
<b>23 ONE WORD FOR A PHRASE</b> (單字代替片語)	181—186	
<b>24 VOCABULARY</b> (字彙)	187—204	
A. Similes (明喻)	B. Compound Words (複合詞)	
C. Common Abbreviations (常用縮寫字)	D. Collective Nouns (集合名詞)	
E. Useful Common Words (日常用字)	F. Homes (家)	
G. Sounds (聲音)	H. Young Animals (小動物)	
<b>25 PRONUNCIATION</b> (讀音法)	205—211	
A. 'S', 'Z' AND 'IZ' SOUNDS ('S', 'Z' 和 'IZ' 發音)		
B. 'T', 'ID' AND 'D' SOUNDS ('T', 'ID' 和 'D' 發音)		
C. VOICELESS LETTERS (無聲音字母)		
D. WORDS OF THE SAME SOUND (同聲字)		
<b>26 TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES</b> (句子改寫法)	212—217	
<b>27 COMPREHENSIONS</b> (閱讀理解)	218—229	
<b>28 TEST 1, TEST 2</b> (模擬測驗一、模擬測驗二)	230—254	
<b>29 ANSWERS</b> (答案)	255—265	

# Index 索引

The number refers to pages.

## A

- a ..... 14, 35  
a few ..... 14  
a large amount of ..... 14  
a large number of ..... 14  
a lot of ..... 14  
a small ..... 14  
a small amount of ..... 14  
a small number of ..... 14  
abbreviation ..... 164, 191  
abstract noun ..... 7, 38  
active voice ..... 135, 136, 138, 139, 141, 143-145  
adjectives .... 1, 41, 149-153, 212  
adjective of quality ..... 41  
adjective of quantity ..... 41  
adjective of number ..... 41  
adverbs ..... 2, 71, 149-153, 212  
adverbs of time ..... 71  
adverbs of place ..... 71  
adverbs of frequency ..... 72  
adverbs of manner ..... 72  
adverbs of degree ..... 73  
adverbs of negation ..... 73  
adverbs of affirmation ..... 73  
affirmative ..... 106, 119  
after ..... 98  
afterwards ..... 71  
ago ..... 125  
all ..... 33  
altogether ..... 73  
all at once ..... 76  
almost ..... 73  
already ..... 65, 71, 108  
although ..... 99, 212  
always ..... 71, 72, 80  
an ..... 14, 35  
and ..... 98  
another ..... 33  
antonym ..... 158, 159  
any ..... 14, 33, 73  
anybody ..... 33  
anyone ..... 33  
anywhere ..... 72

- apostrophe ('). ..... 20  
apostrophe s('s) ..... 20  
articles ..... 35  
as ..... 73  
as if ..... 100  
as long as ..... 100  
as soon as ..... 100  
as well as ..... 100  
at ..... 85, 86  
at last ..... 76  
at once ..... 71, 76  
auxiliary verb (helping verb) .... 58, 106, 107, 110, 113, 119, 145  
away ..... 72
- B**
- back ..... 72  
backward ..... 72  
be ..... 59  
because ..... 98  
before ..... 80, 98  
before long ..... 76  
between...and ..... 87  
both ..... 33  
both...and ..... 101  
but ..... 98, 165, 212  
by ..... 85, 136
- C**
- can ..... 61  
capital letter ..... 7, 122, 164  
certainly ..... 73  
clauses ..... 4, 98, 212  
close-ended question ..... 113  
collective noun ..... 7, 194  
colon ..... 165  
come ..... 125  
comma ..... 165  
command and request ..... 5, 132, 143  
common gender ..... 15  
common noun ..... 7, 38  
comparative degree of  
adjectives ..... 43  
comparative degree of  
adverbs ..... 78  
comparison of adjectives .. 43, 212

- comparison of adverbs .... 77, 212  
compound conjunctions ..... 100  
compound noun ..... 11  
compound word ..... 188  
comprehension ..... 218  
conjunctions....2, 98, 128, 212, 213  
consonant ..... 35, 46  
could ..... 61  
countable noun ..... 13

## D

- daily ..... 71  
dash ..... 166  
definite article (the) ..... 36  
demonstrative adjective ..... 42  
demonstrative pronoun ..... 29  
did ..... 59, 111  
direct command ..... 132  
direct speech ..... 122, 165  
direct statement ..... 123, 125  
do ..... 59, 111  
doer ..... 135  
does ..... 59, 111  
down ..... 72  
downstairs ..... 72, 85  
during ..... 85

## E

- each .....  
either ..... 3  
either...or ..... 101  
emphasizing pronoun ..... 29  
enough ..... 73, 81  
even if ..... 101  
ever ..... 80, 111  
everybody ..... 33  
everyone ..... 33  
exclamation ..... 5, 133  
exclamation mark ..... 165

## F

- fairy ..... 73  
feminine gender ..... 15  
few ..... 14  
first person ..... 24, 26, 28, 60, 66  
for ..... 65, 85, 99  
formation of adverbs ..... 74

formation of adjectives.....43  
formation of words .....149  
formerly .....71  
forward .....72  
from.....87  
full stop .....128,164  
fully .....73  
future continuous tense.....67  
future perfect tense .....67  
future tense.....50, 64

## G

gender .....15  
generally .....80  
gerund .....212

## H

had .....59  
had to .....124  
has .....59  
have .....59  
helping verb .....50, 145  
here .....72, 125  
how .....72, 115, 128  
how far .....116  
how long.....116  
how many .....115  
how many times .....72, 115  
how old .....116  
how often.....72,116  
hyphen.....166

## I

if.....99, 128, 213  
imperative mood .....132  
in.....86, 87  
indefinite articles (a, an) .....35  
indefinite pronoun.....33  
indirect command .....132  
indirect question .....128  
indirect speech.....122  
indirect statement ..... 122, 125  
infinitive.....212  
infinitive mood .....132  
inside.....72  
interjections.....2, 105  
interrogative adjective.....42

interrogative adverbs.....73, 114  
interrogative pronoun.....30, 114  
interrogative sentence..106, 212  
into.....87  
intransitive verb.....58  
in front of .....76  
in order that .....101  
irregular comparison of  
adjectives .....48  
irregular comparison of  
adverbs .....79

## J

just .....65

## L

last night .....125  
lately .....71  
lest.....99  
like (like running).....1  
long ago .....71  
lowly .....74

## M

many.....14, 33  
masculine gender.....15  
material noun.....7, 38  
may .....60,124  
might .....60, 124  
much .....14, 73  
must.....61, 124, 213

## N

necessary .....213  
nearly .....73  
need.....61  
negative sentence.....106  
neither...nor .....101  
neuter gender.....15  
never .....71, 72, 80, 111  
no .....73, 114  
nobody .....33  
none.....33  
no one .....33  
not .....73  
nothing.....33  
not only...but also .....101  
not...yet .....108

nouns .....1, 7, 149-153

now .....71,125

## O

object .....5, 24, 28, 29, 81,135  
often .....80  
of the.....20  
on.....86,87  
only .....81  
on purpose .....76  
once .....72  
once upon a time .....71  
one.....33  
one word for a phrase.....181  
one word for many .....173  
open-ended question.....113  
opposite .....158, 159  
or.....99,213  
otherwise.....99  
ought to.....61  
out .....72  
outside.....72  
over and over .....76

## P

partly .....73  
parts of speech .....1  
passive voice .....  
135-136, 138, 139, 141, 143-145  
past tense .....50, 64  
past continuous tense .....  
64, 66, 123, 138, 144  
past perfect tense .....  
64,66, 123,124,141,144

past participle.....50,136,143  
personal pronoun.....4,24,26  
phrases.....4,38,98,165  
plenty of.....14  
plural noun .....8  
plural verb .....12  
position of adverb.....80  
positive degree of adjective  
of comparison.....43  
positive degree of adverbs  
of comparison.....78  
possessive adjective....26, 38, 42  
possessive noun.....20

possessive pronoun ..... 25, 26  
predicate ..... 4, 5, 6  
prefixes ..... 160  
prepositions ..... 2, 84  
prepositional phrase ..... 88  
prepositions of place ..... 86  
prepositions of time ..... 85  
present tense ..... 50, 64  
present continuous tense ..... 64, 65, 123, 138, 144  
present perfect tense ..... 64, 65, 136, 139, 144  
present participle ..... 50  
pronouns ..... 1, 24, 164  
pronunciation ..... 205  
proper noun ..... 7, 38, 164  
punctuation ..... 164

## **Q**

question ..... 5, 110, 111, 119, 128, 143, 165  
question mark ..... 110, 128, 165  
question tags/tail question ..... 119  
quite ..... 73  
quotation mark ..... 122, 164, 166

## **R**

receiver ..... 135  
reflexive pronoun ..... 28  
relative pronoun ..... 31

## **S**

second person ..... 24, 26, 28, 60, 66  
seldom ..... 80  
semi-colon ..... 165  
sentence ..... 5  
several ..... 14  
shall ..... 60, 66  
should ..... 60  
similar ..... 157  
simile ..... 187  
simple present tense ..... 64, 111, 123, 136

simple past tense ..... 64, 65, 111, 123, 136, 143  
simple future tense ..... 64, 66, 141, 144

since ..... 65, 71, 86, 99  
singular noun ..... 8  
singular verb ..... 12  
so ..... 73  
so that ..... 101  
so...that ..... 101  
some ..... 14, 33, 107, 111  
somebody ..... 107  
someone ..... 107, 111  
something ..... 107, 111  
sometimes ..... 80  
soon ..... 71  
speech ..... 212  
statement ..... 5, 119, 124  
subject ..... 4, 5, 6, 24, 28, 29, 64, 135  
superlative degree of adjective ..... 43  
superlative degree of adverbs ..... 78  
surely ..... 73  
syllable ..... 46  
synonym ..... 157, 158

## **T**

tenses of verb ..... 64  
than ..... 99  
that ..... 99, 122  
the ..... 36  
there ..... 72  
these ..... 125  
third person ..... 24, 26, 28, 60, 66, 123  
third person singular ..... 64  
this ..... 125  
though ..... 99  
though...yet ..... 101  
thrice ..... 72  
thus ..... 125  
till ..... 100  
to and fro ..... 76  
today ..... 125  
tomorrow ..... 71, 125  
transformation of sentence ..... 212  
transitive verb ..... 58, 80  
twice ..... 72

## **U**

uncountable noun ..... 13  
unless ..... 100, 213  
until ..... 100  
up ..... 72  
upstairs ..... 75  
useful common words ..... 196

## **V**

verbs ..... 2, 5, 50, 149-153  
verb to be ..... 55, 59, 80, 136, 143, 144  
vocabulary ..... 187  
voice ..... 135, 212  
vowel ..... 35

## **W**

what ..... 30, 114, 128  
when ..... 100, 114, 128  
whenever ..... 100  
where ..... 100, 114, 128  
wherever ..... 100  
whether ..... 128  
whether...or ..... 101  
who ..... 30, 114, 121  
wholly ..... 7  
whom ..... 30, 115, 121  
whose ..... 30, 115  
why ..... 115, 128  
while ..... 100  
which ..... 30, 114  
will ..... 59, 66, 124  
wishes ..... 133  
would ..... 60, 124

## **Y**

yes ..... 73, 124  
yesterday ..... 125  
yet ..... 65

## PARTS OF SPEECH (詞類)

The different kinds of words are called Parts of Speech. There are eight Parts of Speech:-

(不同的字稱「詞類」，「詞類」共分八種。)

Look at the following sentences about John:

1. John likes running in the park.

↑  
noun  
(名詞)  
↑  
verb  
(動詞)  
↑  
preposition  
(前置詞／介詞)

2. He runs fast but he is careless.

↑  
pronoun  
(代名詞／代詞)  
↑  
adverb  
(副詞)  
↑  
conjunction  
(連接詞)  
↑  
adjective  
(形容詞)

3. Oops! He is bumping into people again.

↑  
Interjection  
(感歎詞)

### A NOUNS (名詞)

A NOUN is a naming word for a person, an animal, a thing or a place.

「名詞」是用在人、動物或地方的名稱。

e.g. 1. The book is on the desk.

2. Peter saw a snake in the garden this morning.

### B PRONOUNS (代名詞或代詞)

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

「代名詞」是用來代替「名詞」的字。

e.g. 1. Mary was afraid because she saw a snake.

2. Napoleon was a great man. He was French.

### C ADJECTIVES (形容詞)

An ADJECTIVE is a describing word that tells us something about a noun or a pronoun.

「形容詞」是用來表示人或物品的性質、狀態、數量…的字。

e.g. 1. A strong man killed a fierce tiger.

2. Tom is a fat boy.

## D VERBS (動詞)

A VERB is a doing word that shows what a noun does.

「動詞」是用來表示人或物所做的動作的字。

- e.g. 1. Tom is clever and kind.
- 2. My sister fell from the top of a ladder yesterday.

## E ADVERBS (副詞)

An ADVERB is a word that helps a verb. It gives more meaning to a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

「副詞」是用來修飾「動詞」、「形容詞」或其他「副詞」的字。

- e.g. 1. The water is very hot.
- 2. The girl sings sweetly.
- 3. A snake slithered extremely fast through the grass.

## F PREPOSITIONS (前置詞 / 介詞)

A PREPOSITION is a word placed before a noun or pronoun, to show its relation to other words. It can be used to show a position, place, direction, time, etc.

「前置詞/介詞」放在「名詞」或「代名詞」之前，用來表示一個人或一件物與他人或他物的關係的字。

- e.g. 1. I put my hand on her shoulder.
- 2. I am pointing to the picture.
- 3. He is running up the hill.

## G CONJUNCTIONS (連接詞)

A CONJUNCTION is a word used to join words, phrases, clauses or sentences together.

「連接詞」是用來連接「字詞」、「片語」、「子句」或「句子」的字。

- e.g. 1. John is fat and short.
- 2. You will be sick if you eat too much.
- 3. The girl is thin but the boy is fat.

## H INTERJECTIONS (感歎詞)

An INTERJECTION is a word used to express strong feeling.

「感歎詞」是用來表示心中所蘊藏着感情的字。

- e.g. 1. Hurray! We shall have a holiday on Monday.
- 2. Oh! How foolish I was to give up in the test.
- 3. Alas! My aunt has crashed her car.

# EXERCISE 1

*Read the following paragraph.*

Once a young woodsman was cutting trees on the bank of a deep river. By accident his axe fell into the river. It sank to the bottom at once. He was a very poor but honest man. He hardly had any money to buy another one, so he sat down and cried bitterly. Oh! What a poor man.

*Now write down:*

1. two nouns:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

2. two verbs:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

3. two adjectives:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

4. two prepositions:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

5. two conjunctions:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

6. two pronouns:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

7. two adverbs:

\_\_\_\_\_ , \_\_\_\_\_

8. one interjection:

\_\_\_\_\_ (Other answers are acceptable)

## 2 PHRASES (片語) AND CLAUSES (子句)

### A PHRASES (片語) :

A phrase is a group of words which makes sense, but not complete sense.

「片語」是一組有意思但並不完整的字。

- e.g. 1. The planes fly in the sky.  
2. The sun rises in the east.  
3. He knows how to swim.

### B CLAUSES (子句) :

A clause is a group of words which forms part of a sentence, and contains a subject and a predicate.

「子句」是「句子」的一部份。它有自己的主詞和述詞，它能令句子的意思更完整。

- e.g. 1. We must wash our hands before we eat.  
2. The girl whose hair is red is my cousin.  
3. He said that he was thirsty.

## EXERCISE 2

In each of the following sentences, put a tick ( ✓ ) if the group of words in **bold** is a phrase and a cross ( ✗ ) if the group of words in **bold** is a clause.

1. She poured some tea **into the cups**. \_\_\_\_\_
2. My sister knows **how to cook**. \_\_\_\_\_
3. This is the girl **whose dog is dead**. \_\_\_\_\_
4. They are dancing **round the table**. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We stay at home **because it is raining**. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I shall be very happy **if he comes**. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Tell me **where she lives**. \_\_\_\_\_
8. His baby cried **all that night**. \_\_\_\_\_
9. There are eight pencils **under the chair**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. **When she makes tea**, she always uses very hot water. —

## 3 SENTENCES (句子)

**A** A SENTENCE is a group of words which makes complete sense. 「句子」是一組表達完整意思的字。

Look at the following sentence, it is a simple sentence:



There are four kinds of sentence. 「句子」有四種種類：

1. **Statement** (敘述句) e.g. The sun shines in the day-time.
2. **Question** (疑問句) e.g. Can you swim?
3. **Command** (命令句) e.g. Come here, my boy.
4. **Exclamation** (感歎句) e.g. How honest he is!

**B** Each sentence has a subject (主詞) and a predicate (述詞).

e.g. The book was on the shelf.  
 subject predicate

Here are more examples:

下表中有更多的例子：

Subject (主詞)	Predicate (述詞)
1. They	became great doctors.
2. Columbus	discovered America many years ago.
3. We	reached there after sunset.
4. That big boy	is strong and healthy.
5. Water	freezes in winter.

## EXERCISE 3

Name the kind of sentence in each of the following:

1. Come in, please. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Most boys like swimming. \_\_\_\_\_
3. How fine it is today! \_\_\_\_\_
4. Where does the boy live? \_\_\_\_\_
5. The train will arrive at seven o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 4

Separate the subject from the predicate in the following sentences:

1. I gave him a book as birthday present last year.
2. This news is important.
3. My father will take me to Japan this summer.
4. The teacher asked them a difficult question.
5. The hunters killed a tiger this morning.

	Subject (主詞)	Predicate (述詞)
1.	I	
2.	This news	
3.	My father	
4.	The teacher	
5.	The hunters	

# NOUNS (名詞)

## THE KINDS OF NOUNS (名詞的種類)

### 1. Common Nouns (普通名詞)

A Common Noun is a name given to any member of person, places and things. 「普通名詞」是給予一個人物、地方或事物的名稱。

e.g.	Person (人物) : father, parents, teacher ...
	Places (地方) : park, sea, sky ...
	Things (事物) : fan, computer, mobile phone ...

### 2. Proper Nouns (專有名詞)

A Proper Noun is a name given to a person, a thing, a place or an animal. It always begins with a capital letter.

「專有名詞」是給一個人、物件、地方或動物的特別專有的名稱。字首的第一個字母一定是大寫。

	<u>Person</u>	<u>Thing</u>	<u>Place</u>	<u>Animal</u>
e.g.	Amy Mr. Lau	Drama Society Nike shoes	Tokyo Ocean Park	Lucky Thunder

### 3. Collective Nouns (集合名詞)

A Collective Noun is a name in singular form, given to a member of person, animals or things that stands for many individuals.

「集合名詞」是以單數形式代表許多個體的名稱。

e.g. cattle (牲畜)	audience (聽眾)	fish (魚)
------------------	---------------	----------

### 4. Material Nouns (物質名詞)

A Material Noun is a noun given to materials.

「物質名詞」是給予物品材料的名稱。

e.g. stone (石塊)	paper (紙張)	wood (木材)
-----------------	------------	-----------

### 5. Abstract Nouns (抽象名詞)

An Abstract Noun is a noun of a quality, state of condition or motion.

「抽象名詞」是給予品質、狀況或動作的名稱。

e.g. Quality (品質) : ugliness (醜陋)
Condition (狀況) : health (健康)
Motion (動作) : speed (速度)

## EXERCISE 5

Name the underlined word in each of the sentences the kind of noun:

e.g. Tiger Lee is a short, thin boy.

e.g. common noun

1. The giant is as tall as a mountain.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

2. He lives in Happy Valley.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

3. Thomas brought his car to America.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

4. The shepherd found his cattle in the meadow.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

5. Fresh air and exercise are good for the health.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

6. These slippers are made of leather.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

7. "Come on. Dinner is ready," shouted Joan.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

8. Tom lives at North Point only a short way to Mary.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

9. She is a woman of wealth.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

10. This gold axe belonged to the humble old man. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ noun

**B**

### SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS (單數和複數)

A singular noun shows one person or thing.

名詞只表示一個人或一件物件，我們稱它「單數」名詞。

A plural noun shows more than one person or thing.

名詞表示多於一個人或一件物件，我們稱它「複數」名詞。

e.g. 1. a tree (Singular)

3. a woman (Singular)

2. some trees (Plural)

4. two women (Plural)

#### 1. The ways to form plurals: (複數名詞的形式)

a. By adding "-s" to the original word. 在原本字後加上 '-s' 字。

##### Singular

##### Plural

1. book (書本) → books

2. eye (眼睛) → eyes

3. pen (鋼筆) → pens

4. picture (圖畫) → pictures

##### Singular

##### Plural

5. ring (戒指) → rings

6. room (房間) → rooms

7. shop (商店) → shops

8. table (桌子) → tables

b. Nouns ending in "-s", "-ch", "-sh", or "-x", add "-es".

名詞最後的字母是'-s', '-ch'或'-x'，便在原本的字後加上 '-es'.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. box (箱子) →	boxes	5. dish (碟子) →	dishes
2. branch (樹枝) →	branches	6. fox (狐狸) →	foxes
3. bush (叢林) →	bushes	7. tax (稅) →	taxes
4. class (班) →	classes	8. witch (女巫) →	witches

**Exceptions (例外) :**

1. ox (公牛) → oxen	2. stomach (胃) → stomachs
-------------------	---------------------------

c. Nouns ending in "-o", add "-es".

名詞最後的字母是 '-o'，在原本的字後加上 '-es'。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. cargo (貨物) →	cargoes	4. potato (馬鈴薯) →	potatoes
2. hero (英雄) →	heroes	5. tomato (蕃茄) →	tomatoes
3. mango (芒果) →	mangoes	6. volcano (火山) →	volcanoes

**Exceptions (例外) :**

1. bamboo (竹) → bamboos	4. solo (獨唱曲) → solos
2. photo (照片) → photos	5. studio (畫室 / 工作室) → studios
3. piano (鋼琴) → pianos	6. zoo (動物園) → zoos

d. Nouns ending in "-y" with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) before it, add "-s".

名詞最後的字母是 '-y'，而 '-y' 字母前是母音 (a, e, i, o, u) 時，在原本的字後加上 '-s'。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. boy (男孩) →	boys	4. key (匙) →	keys
2. day (日子) →	days	5. toy (玩具) →	toys
3. donkey (驢) →	donkeys	6. way (路徑) →	ways

- e. Nouns ending in "-y" with a consonant before it , change "-y" into "-i" and add "-es".

名詞最後的字母是 '-y'，而'-y'字母前是子音 (即a,e,i,o,u以外的字母)，將 '-y' 變為 '-i' 及加 '-es'。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. <u>baby</u> (嬰兒) → babies		6. <u>duty</u> (職務) → duties	
2. <u>body</u> (身體) → bodies		7. <u>fly</u> (蒼蠅) → flies	
3. <u>city</u> (城市) → cities		8. <u>lady</u> (女士) → ladies	
4. <u>copy</u> (副本) → copies		9. <u>party</u> (聚會) → parties	
5. <u>country</u> (國家) → countries		10. <u>story</u> (故事) → stories	

- f. Nouns ending in "-f" or "-fe" ,change "-f" or "-fe" into "-v" , and add "-es". 名詞最後的字母是 '-f' 或 '-fe'，將 '-f' 或 '-fe' 變為 '-v'，然後加上 '-es'。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. <u>calf</u> (小牛) → calves		6. <u>shelf</u> (架) → shelves	
2. <u>half</u> (一半) → halves		7. <u>thief</u> (賊) → thieves	
3. <u>knife</u> (刀) → knives		8. <u>wife</u> (妻子) → wives	
4. <u>leaf</u> (葉) → leaves		9. <u>wolf</u> (狼) → wolves	
5. <u>life</u> (生命) → lives			

#### Exceptions (例外) :

1. <u>chief</u> (首領) → chiefs	6. <u>gulf</u> (大海灣) → gulfs
2. <u>belief</u> (信仰) → beliefs	7. <u>proof</u> (證據) → proofs
3. <u>cliff</u> (懸崖) → cliffs	8. <u>roof</u> (屋頂) → roofs
4. <u>dwarf</u> (侏儒) → dwarfs	9. <u>safe</u> (夾萬) → safes
5. <u>hoof</u> (馬蹄) → hoofs	

- g. Some nouns change from singular to plural by changing the vowels (a, e, i, o, u). 將名詞字裏的母音改變而成為「複數名詞」。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. <u>foot</u> (腳) → feet		5. <u>mouse</u> (老鼠) → mice	
2. <u>goose</u> (鵝) → geese		6. <u>tooth</u> (牙) → teeth	
3. <u>louse</u> (虱) → lice		7. <u>woman</u> (女人) → women	
4. <u>man</u> (男人) → men			

h. Add "-s" to the principal word in a compound noun to form plural.

合成名詞由「單數名詞」變「複數名詞」時，在主要名詞後加 's' 。

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>
1. brother - in - law	(姐夫)	→ brothers - in - law
2. daughter - in - law	(媳婦)	→ daughters - in - law
3. mouse - trap	(捕鼠夾)	→ mouse - traps
4. passer-by	(過路人)	→ passers - by
5. son - in - law	(女婿)	→ sons - in - law
6. step - mother	(繼母)	→ step - mothers

2. There are some nouns which have the same form for singular and plural. 有些名詞無論是“單數”或“複數”，都是同一個字。

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. cattle (小牛)	→ cattle	5. poor (窮人)	→ poor
2. Chinese (中國人)	→ Chinese	6. salmon (三文魚)	→ salmon
3. cod (鯊魚)	→ cod	7. sheep (羊)	→ sheep
4. deer (鹿)	→ deer	8. series (系列)	→ series

3. Some nouns are expressed plural in form and used in plural only.  
有些名詞祇以複數出現。

1. binoculars (雙筒望遠鏡)	2. clothes (衣服)	3. goods (貨物)
4. headquarters (總部)	5. scissors (剪刀)	6. species (種類)
7. spectacles (眼鏡)	8. tights (緊身褲)	9. trousers (褲)

4. Some nouns are plural in form but used only in singular.  
有些名詞形式是複數，但祇作單數用。

1. athletics (運動)	2. economics (經濟)	3. news (新聞)
4. physics (物理)		

5. Some nouns do not have plural.  
有些名詞是沒有複數形式。

1. copper (銅)	2. corn (穀類)	3. furniture (傢俱)
4. gold (黃金)	5. luggage (行李)	6. machinery (機械)
7. scenery (風景)	8. wheat (小麥)	9. Chinese (中國人)

6. Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb.

有些單數名詞後面常用複數時式。

- |                    |                    |                |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. audience (聽眾)   | 2. committee (委員會) | 3. family (家庭) |
| 4. government (政府) | 5. staff (員工)      | 6. team (團隊)   |
- e.g. My family are early risers.

7. Some nouns and uncountable nouns after the following words always take a singular verb. 有些名詞和不能數名詞跟在下列字後常用單數時式。

- |            |                |                 |                  |
|------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. any     | 2. anybody     | 3. anyone       | 4. each          |
| 5. each of | 6. either...or | 7. every        | 8. neither...nor |
| 9. nobody  | 10. no one     | 11. a number of |                  |

e.g. If anyone calls, tell him I will be back soon.

## EXERCISE 6

Change the following nouns into plural form:

- |          |       |
|----------|-------|
| 1. kiss  | _____ |
| 2. knife | _____ |
| 3. mouse | _____ |
| 4. deer  | _____ |
| 5. baby  | _____ |
| 6. foot  | _____ |
| 7. mango | _____ |

- |            |       |
|------------|-------|
| 8. tiger   | _____ |
| 9. glass   | _____ |
| 10. child  | _____ |
| 11. reply  | _____ |
| 12. monkey | _____ |
| 13. bush   | _____ |
| 14. studio | _____ |

## EXERCISE 7

Change the following nouns into singular form:

- |                |       |
|----------------|-------|
| 1. oxen        | _____ |
| 2. sheep       | _____ |
| 3. princesses  | _____ |
| 4. valleys     | _____ |
| 5. dishes      | _____ |
| 6. mathematics | _____ |
| 7. pianos      | _____ |

- |             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| 8. watches  | _____ |
| 9. geese    | _____ |
| 10. ponies  | _____ |
| 11. shelves | _____ |
| 12. news    | _____ |
| 13. beliefs | _____ |
| 14. loaves  | _____ |

## EXERCISE 8

Give a name for each group of words:

e.g. orange, apple, lemon, peach. fruit

1. spring, summer, autumn, winter.
2. pork, beef, mutton.
3. black, yellow, white, red.
4. north, east, south, west.
5. iron, lead, copper, gold.
6. potato, cabbage, lettuce, carrot.
7. ant, bee, fly, mosquito.
8. lion, deer, buffalo, donkey.
9. church, school, hospital, cinema.
10. shirt, coat, trousers, dress.

### C COUNTABLE NOUNS and UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (可數名詞和不可數名詞)

- Countable nouns are nouns which can be counted.

「可數名詞」是指名詞可以一件件數得到。

e.g. boys, combs, butterflies, geese

- Uncountable nouns are nouns which cannot be counted.

「不可數名詞」是指名詞不可以一件件數得到。

e.g. advice, bread, informations furniture  
juice, luggage, money, progress  
sand, scenery, water, weather

1. We use the following special words with countable and uncountable nouns.

下面是用於「可數名詞」和「不可數名詞」時的一些特別的字：

	Special words	Countable Nouns (example)	Uncountable Nouns (example)
a.	any	bottles	juice
b.	some	books	sand
c.	plenty of	tables	clay
d.	a lot of	children	water
e.	a	boy	—
f.	an	umbrella	—
g.	a few / few	apples	—
h.	several	trees	—
i.	a small / large number of	applicants	—
j.	many	watches	—
k.	a little / little	—	money
l.	much	—	noise
m.	a small / large amount of	—	dust

## EXERCISE 9

Choose a suitable countable or uncountable noun from the box to complete the following sentences.

oil	eye	water	noise	cattle
juice	guests	milk	tourists	

1. Mr. Wong lost an \_\_\_\_\_ in an accident last month.
2. Remember to drink enough \_\_\_\_\_ before and after doing exercise.
3. Let's go and buy some \_\_\_\_\_ and milk.
4. The boys are making too much \_\_\_\_\_ in the library.
5. Only a few \_\_\_\_\_ have arrived at the ceremony.
6. Every year a large number of \_\_\_\_\_ from China come to Hong Kong.
7. My mother uses little \_\_\_\_\_ in her cooking.
8. Does the farmer keep any \_\_\_\_\_?

## EXERCISE 10

*Underline the correct answer in each of the sentences below:*

1. Why do you buy so (many, much) vegetables?
2. There is (a few, a little) food left in the refrigerator.
3. You are putting too (many, much) chocolate in the cake.
4. Have you got (an, any) information for me?
5. Derek has collected a large (number, amount) of baseball cards.
6. There is (some, any) sand in my shoe.
7. Sorry, I can't give you (some, any) advice.
8. John has brought too (many, much) biscuits to school.



### GENDER (性別)

1. The Four kinds of gender: 「性別」的種類有四種：

a. Masculine Gender (陽性) — male creatures.

e.g. boy, king, tiger

b. Feminine Gender (陰性) — female creatures.

e.g. girl, queen, tigress

c. Common Gender (通性) — either male or female creatures.

e.g. baby, child, sheep

d. Neuter Gender (中性) — things with neither life nor sex.

e.g. apple, ruler, pen

2. The ways to form feminine gender from masculine gender.

將男性名詞變成女性名詞的方法。

a. By adding '-ess' to the masculine:

在男性名詞字後加上 '-ess'。

<u>MASCULINE</u>	<u>FEMININE</u>
1. baron (男爵)	→ baroness
2. count (伯爵)	→ countess
3. giant (巨人)	→ giantess
4. god (神)	→ goddess
5. heir (繼承人)	→ heiress
6. host (主人)	→ hostess
7. leopard (豹)	→ leopardess

<u>MASCULINE</u>	<u>FEMININE</u>
8. lion (獅)	→ lioness
9. priest (牧師)	→ priestess
10. prior (修道院院長)	→ prioress
11. prince (王子)	→ princess
12. shepherd (牧人)	→ shepherdess
13. steward (男服務員)	→ stewardess
14. tailor (裁縫)	→ tailoress

b. By dropping the last vowel in the masculine and add '-ess', sometimes with slight changes: 將男性名詞末尾的響音字母刪去，在字後加上 '-ess'。

<u>MASCULINE</u>	<u>FEMININE</u>
1. actor (演員)	→ actress
2. emperor (皇帝)	→ empress

<u>MASCULINE</u>	<u>FEMININE</u>
3. tiger (老虎)	→ tigress
4. waiter (招待員)	→ waitress

c. By changing a feminine word before or after the masculine:

在男性名詞前面或後面加上一個女性的字。

<u>MASCULINE</u>	<u>FEMININE</u>
1. <u>he</u> -goat (山羊)	→ she-goat
2. <u>he</u> -bear (公熊)	→ she-bear
3. <u>grand-father</u> (祖父)	→ grand-mother
4. <u>grand-son</u> (孫)	→ grand-daughter
5. <u>land-lord</u> (地主)	→ land-lady
6. <u>man</u> -servant (男僕人)	→ maid-servant
7. <u>milkman</u> (送奶人)	→ milkmaid
8. <u>washerman</u> (洗衣人)	→ washerwoman

d. By using a different word: 男性名詞和女性名詞的字完全不相同。

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
1. bachelor (單身男子) →	spinster (未婚女子)	14. lord (貴族) →	lady (貴婦)
2. boy (男孩) →	girl (女孩)	15. man (男人) →	woman (女人)
3. brother (兄弟) →	sister (姊妹)	16. monk (修士) →	nun (修女)
4. bull (公牛) →	cow (母牛)	17. nephew (姪) →	niece (姪女)
5. cock (公雞) →	hen (母雞)	18. papa (爸爸) →	mama (媽媽)
6. drake (公鴨) →	duck (母鴨)	19. sir (先生) →	madam (小姐)
7. duke (公爵) →	duchess (女公爵)	20. son (兒子) →	daughter (女兒)
8. father (父親) →	mother (母親)	21. uncle (伯父) →	aunt (伯母)
9. fox (狐狸) →	vixen (女狐)	22. widower (鳏夫) →	widow (寡婦)
10. gander (雄鵝) →	goose (雌鵝)	23. wizard (巫師) →	witch (女巫)
11. governor (總督) →	governess (女總督)	24. groom (新郎) →	bride (新娘)
12. husband (丈夫) →	wife (妻子)	25. gentleman (紳士) →	lady (淑女)
13. king (皇帝) →	queen (皇后)		

### 3. Nouns in the common gender.

通性名詞即是無分男性或女性的名詞。

1. baby (嬰孩) ——	(male or female baby)
2. bird (鳥) ——	(cock or hen)
3. cat (貓) ——	(male or female cat)
4. cattle (牛羣) ——	(cows or bulls)
5. calf (小牛) ——	(bullock or heifer)
6. child (孩子) ——	(boy or girl, son or daughter)
7. cousin (表親) ——	(male or female cousin)
8. deer (鹿) ——	(stag or hind)
9. enemy (敵人) ——	(male or female enemy)
10. friend (朋友) ——	(male or female friend)
11. mouse (老鼠) ——	(male or female mouse)
12. parent (父母) ——	(father or mother)
13. pupil (學生) ——	(boy or girl)
14. sheep (羊) ——	(ram or ewe)

## EXERCISE 11

Write the following words in pairs under masculine and feminine genders:

wife	queen	husband	aunt	nephew
mother	uncle	niece	king	witch
duke	father	wizard	princess	duchess
daughter	prince	mistress	son	master

Example: sister      brother

	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Masculine</u>
1.	_____	_____
2.	_____	_____
3.	_____	_____
4.	_____	_____
5.	_____	_____

	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Masculine</u>
6.	_____	_____
7.	_____	_____
8.	_____	_____
9.	_____	_____
10.	_____	_____

## EXERCISE 12

Change the following words into the opposite gender:

1. uncle	_____
2. hero	_____
3. boy-scout	_____
4. goose	_____
5. lady	_____
6. horse	_____
7. actress	_____
8. steward	_____
9. boy	_____

10. madam	_____
11. vixen	_____
12. bachelor	_____
13. headmaster	_____
14. groom	_____
15. king	_____
16. mother	_____
17. milkman	_____
18. tiger	_____

## EXERCISE 13

*Rewrite the following sentences by changing the words in **BOLD** into the opposite gender.*

1. His **niece** is an **actress**.

---

---

2. My **daughter** is going to be a **bride**.

---

---

3. A **fox** caught a **hen** and killed it.

---

---

4. The **lion** is strong enough to kill a **horse**.

---

---

5. My **grandmother** was a great **tailoress**.

---

---

6. The **wizard** told the **boy** to take the lamp.

---

---

7. The **shepherd** feeds a **he-goat**.

---

---

8. The **headmistress** told the **boy-scouts** not to be naughty.

---

---

## ■ POSSESSIVE NOUNS (物主名詞)

Possessive Nouns shows possession. 「物主名詞」用來表示它所佔有的。

- e.g. 1. The boy's mother is a teacher.  
2. The ladies' coats are dirty.  
3. The elephants' legs are strong and stout.

The ways to form Possessive Nouns: 形成「物主名詞」的方法：

1. By adding an apostrophe S ('s) to the nouns which do not end in "-s".  
在沒有"-s"的名詞尾未加上省略號和 S ('s) 。

- e.g. 1. girl — girl's  
2. dog — dog's  
3. children — children's  
4. women — women's

2. By adding an apostrophe (') to plural nouns which end in "-s".  
在有'-s'的名詞尾未加上省略號 (') 。

- e.g. 1. ladies — ladies'  
2. boys — boys'

3. By using "of the" with non-living things.  
用 'of the' 將死物物件形成物主名詞。

- e.g. 1. The kitchen's window is broken. (**wrong**)  
The window of the kitchen is broken. (**correct**)  
2. The frying pan's lid is cracked. (**wrong**)  
The lid of the frying pan is cracked. (**correct**)

## EXERCISE 14

*Make the following expressions plural.*

e.g. The boy's jacket.

The boys' jackets.

1. The baby's boot.

---

2. The student's book.

---

3. The man's shirt.

---

4. The girl's bag.

---

5. The child's blanket.

---

6. The cattle's foot.

---

7. The witch's knife.

---

8. The scout's badge.

---

## EXERCISE 15

*Insert the apostrophe ( ' ) in the following sentences correctly.*

e.g. All the ladies boots are in the store room.

All the ladies' boots are in the store room.

1. You have to put the students attendance sheets on the table.

---

---

2. There are lots of bears dens in the jungle.

---

---

3. The police found some prisoners uniforms under the bed.

---

---

4. Students are not allowed to enter the Principals Office.

---

---

5. Tom has started preparing for next years examination.

---

---

6. Mr. Yips car is clean.

---

---

## EXERCISE 16

*Decide if the following sentences are correct or not.*

*Blacken the circle next to the correct sentence.*

*Rewrite the sentence if it is wrong.*

1. Mary's arm was seriously hurt in the accident.

---

---

2. Mr. Naji practices yoga on the hill's top every morning.

---

---

3. I can't stop sneezing because the perfume's scent is too strong.

---

---

4. We won't skip the class of Monday because it's taught by Mrs. Smith.

---

---

5. Step on the car's brake when you are going downhill.

---

---

6. Mr. and Mrs. Yip's cars are expensive.

---

---

## PRONOUNS (代名詞 / 代詞)

When a word is used instead of a noun, it is called a PRONOUN.

用來代表名詞的字，我們稱它「代名詞」或「代詞」。

- e.g. 1. The boy is very happy. He is playing football.  
The pronoun "He" stands for the noun "boy".
2. Mary is a good girl. She works very hard.  
The pronoun "She" stands for the proper noun "Mary".

The kinds of Pronouns and their uses:

「代名詞/代詞」的種類和用法：

### A PERSONAL PRONOUNS (人稱代名詞) I / me / you...

1. A Personal Pronoun is used to replace the name of a person or thing.  
「人稱代名詞」是用來代替人或物件名詞的字。
2. There are three classes of personal pronouns: 人稱代名詞有三種：

	As subject (主詞)	As object (受詞)
i. First person (第一人稱)	I, we	me, us
ii. Second person (第二人稱)	you	you
iii. Third person (第三人稱)	he, she, it, they ...	him, her, it, them ...

- e.g. 1. Edwin and I are good friends. He likes me and I like him.  
We study in the same class.
2. The children are playing a football match. They are very serious and the Principal is watching them from the second floor.
3. Jenny has a cat called Tiny Ball. She loves it very much. It is a newborn baby cat and is causing her quite a lot of trouble.

## EXERCISE 17

*Underline the correct pronouns.*

1. I make (he, him) stand there.
2. Between you and (I, me) , there is no great difference.
3. I think (she, her) is a fool.
4. Mary is much cleverer than (they, them) are.
5. (We, Us) shall climb the Lion Rock.
6. (I, Me) am angry with (her, she) .
7. Will (they, them) help (us, we) ?
8. My mother kisses (me, I) .
9. We want you and (he, him) to go.
10. He knows the secret as well as (she, her) does.

## EXERCISE 18

*Replace the underlined words with personal pronouns.*

We, I, They, She, He, him, us, etc.

1. "Did Peter see me last week?" said Mary. ( )
2. "Let Tom and Paul do it," said Mr. Chan. ( )
3. "Are you listening to Joan?" said Joan. ( )
4. A man is knocking at the door. Who is the man? ( )
5. Jack goes to school with me. Jack and I are good friends. ( )

### ■ POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (物主代名詞) mine / yours...

1. A Possessive Pronoun is used to show the thing which the noun possesses. 「物主代名詞」是用來代替擁有某些物件的人的代名詞。

2. There are three kinds of possessive pronouns: 「物主代名詞」有三種。

- i. First Person (第一人稱) : mine, ours
- ii. Second Person (第二人稱) : yours
- iii. Third Person (第三人稱) : his, hers, theirs...

- e.g. 1. Is this iPad yours? Can I borrow it because mine is broken?
2. Joe has bought a new skateboard. It's gorgeous. I wish to have one like his.
3. Don't touch the mobile phones. They are my cousins'. They are theirs.

3. Note that 'my', 'your', 'his', 'her', 'its' and 'their' are Possessive Adjectives. Possessive Adjectives are used with nouns and do the work of adjectives.

留意'my', 'your', 'his', 'her', 'its' and 'their'都是「物主形容詞」。它們和名詞一起使用時，做的是形容詞的工作。

- e.g. 1. I like her dress.
2. Mr. Lee is my piano teacher.

4. The following table shows the Personal Pronouns, their corresponding Possessive Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

Personal Pronoun (As subject) (主詞)	Personal Pronoun (As object) (受詞)	Possessive Pronoun (物主代名詞)	Possessive Adjective (物主形容詞)
I (我)	me (我)	mine (我的)	my (我的)
You (你)	you (你)	yours (你的)	your (你的)
He (他)	him (他)	his (他的)	his (他的)
She (她)	her (她)	hers (她的)	her (她的)
It (它)	it (它)	its (它的)	its (它的)
We (我們)	us (我們)	ours (我們的)	our (我們的)
You (你們)	you (你們)	your (你們的)	your (你們的)
They (他們)	them (他們)	their (他們的)	their (他們的)

Study the following pronouns:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I have a book.<br>It belongs to <u>me</u> .<br>It is <u>my</u> book.<br>It is <u>mine</u> .              | 5. <u>We</u> have a book.<br>It belongs to <u>us</u> .<br>It is <u>our</u> book.<br>It is <u>ours</u> .         |
| 2. <u>You</u> have a book.<br>It belongs to <u>you</u> .<br>It is <u>your</u> book.<br>It is <u>yours</u> . | 6. <u>They</u> have a book.<br>It belongs to <u>them</u> .<br>It is <u>their</u> book.<br>It is <u>theirs</u> . |
| 3. <u>He</u> has a book.<br>It belongs to <u>him</u> .<br>It is <u>his</u> book.<br>It is <u>his</u> .      | 7. <u>It</u> has a tail.<br>It belongs to <u>it</u> .<br>It is <u>its</u> tail.<br>It is <u>its</u> .           |
| 4. <u>She</u> has a book.<br>It belongs to <u>her</u> .<br>It is <u>her</u> book.<br>It is <u>hers</u> .    |   |

## EXERCISE 19

*Fill in each blank with a suitable possessive pronoun.*

1. This homework is \_\_\_\_\_. I took it for you because you were late.
2. I drink my coke and he drinks \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I saw Wilson and Benny grabbed the tennis racket from Judy. It isn't \_\_\_\_\_. It is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Here is your comic book. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ back?
5. The tables are \_\_\_\_\_. We made the reservation last week.



## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (反身代名詞) myself/ yourself / one (ones)...

1. A Reflexive pronoun is used when you want to show that the object of the verb is the same person or thing as the subject of the verb.

「反身代名詞」是動詞的受詞，用來反射主詞的人或物件動作後結果的字。

e.g. I help myself to get improvement.

2. There are three classes of Reflexive Pronouns: myself/ yourself...  
「反身代名詞」分三類。

i.	First person (第一人稱)	myself (我自己的) ourselves (我們自己的)
ii.	Second person (第二人稱)	yourself (你自己的) yourselves (你們自己的)
iii.	Third person (第三人稱)	himself (他自己的) herself (她自己的) itself (它自己的) themselves (他們自己的)

e.g. John killed himself.

1. Who did the killing? → John  
2. Who was killed? → John

## EXERCISE 20

Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronouns.

1. We take care of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I hope you all will enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A cat can wash \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I hit \_\_\_\_\_ with a stick.
5. He often praises \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We cooked the food \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Mary made that new shirt \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I cannot cut my hair \_\_\_\_\_.
9. One should not care for \_\_\_\_\_ alone.
10. The boys are scared of the bullies. They are trying hard to keep \_\_\_\_\_ out of trouble.

## ■ EMPHASIZING PRONOUNS (加強語氣代名詞) myself, himself, ourselves...

An Emphasizing Pronoun is a word added to a sentence right after the subject to strengthen its meaning.

「加強語氣代名詞」通常緊隨在主詞之後。它的作用是加強句子的語氣。

### EXERCISE 21

*Fill in the blanks with the correct emphasizing pronouns.*

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ broke the cup.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ washed the clothes.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ saw him do this.
4. Betty \_\_\_\_\_ did it.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ set the table.

## ■ DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (指示代名詞) this, these, that, those ...

A Demonstrative Pronoun points out the object in a sentence.

「指示代名詞」是用來指示一個句子所說及的人或物的代名詞。

e.g. this, these, that, those.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1. <u>This is</u> my desk.	→ <u>These are</u> my desks.
2. <u>That is</u> your desk.	→ <u>Those are</u> your desks.

### EXERCISE 22

*Fill in the blanks with the correct demonstrative pronouns.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is mine and \_\_\_\_\_ is yours.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is a story book.
3. What are \_\_\_\_\_? Those are my books.
4. Whose pencils are these? \_\_\_\_\_ are his pencils.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ were the places we played hide and seek.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ monkey with a baby got most of the fruit.

**F**

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS (疑問代名詞) who, which, where...

An Interrogative Pronoun is used to ask a question.

「疑問代名詞」是用來發問問題。

The followings are the use of some Interrogative Pronouns:-

下列是「疑問代名詞」的用法。

1. **Who** — used for person in general as subject.

- e.g. 1. Who broke the window?  
2. Who is laughing?  
3. Who knows the answer?

2. **Whom** — used for person as object.

- e.g. 1. Whom do you want to see?  
2. Whom did she meet yesterday?  
3. To whom did you speak?

3. **Whose** — used to show possession.

- e.g. 1. Whose dictionary is this?  
2. Whose book is that?  
3. Whose coat is this?

4. **Which** — used for person or thing.

- e.g. 1. Which of these shirts do you like best?  
2. Which is the right way to the Post office?  
3. Which of you knows my name?

5. **What** — used for thing in general.

- e.g. 1. What do you mean?  
2. What is the matter with you?  
3. What has happened?

## EXERCISE 23

Fill in the blanks with the correct words given in the brackets.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ of these pencils will you take? (Whose, Which, Whom)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ does he want? (Who, Which, What)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is that pretty girl? (Which, Who, Whom)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella is that? (What, Whose, Who)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are you talking with? (Which, Who, Whom)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ will come with me to the party? (Whose, Whom, Who)

### ■ RELATIVE PRONOUNS (關係代名詞) who, whom, which ...

1. A Relative Pronoun refers to the noun or pronoun immediately before it.

「關係代名詞」用來表示在句子中曾經提及的名詞或代名詞。

e.g. You will meet Mrs. Wise who is our English teacher.

2. It is also used to join two sentences together.

它用來把兩個句子連接起來。

- e.g. 1. The boy who is kicking football is my brother.  
2. I asked him whose car that was.  
3. The man whom you met was my uncle.  
4. The books which you bought were useful.  
5. The film that everyone enjoys is very good.

- Note: 1. Who or Whom is used for people.  
2. Which is used for animal and thing.  
3. Whose is used for people and animal.  
4. That is used for people, animal and thing.

## EXERCISE 24

*Fill in the blanks with the correct relative pronouns.*

1. This is the book \_\_\_\_\_ you gave me last year.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ won the game was active.
3. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ dress is blue is our teacher.
4. The way \_\_\_\_\_ you prefer to go is quite beautiful.
5. He is the man \_\_\_\_\_ you want to meet.
6. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ you go to school with is my brother.
7. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ broke into Mr. Chan's house was caught yesterday.
8. The dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ you gave me is useful.
9. Tell us something about the book \_\_\_\_\_ you have read.
10. This is Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ father is a lawyer.

## ■ INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (不定代名詞) all, any, someone ...

An Indefinite Pronoun is used to express that the subject of the sentence has no definite number of person or thing which it possesses.

「不定代名詞」是用於不指定人數或物品數目的代名詞。

Here are some Indefinite Pronouns to learn:

認識下列的「不定代名詞」：

1. all (所有) : We all get wet.
2. another (另一個) : We can fix it another way.
3. any (任何) : I will not tell any of my friends about the secret.
4. anybody (任何人) : Anybody can join the party.
5. anyone (任何一個人) : Susan never told anyone anything.
6. both (兩個都) : Both Mary and John were absent today.
7. each (各個) : Miss Lee has good advice for each of us.
8. either (兩者之一) : Either one will be punished.
9. everybody (人人) : Everybody in the fun fair looks happy.
10. everyone (每個人) : Everyone likes this popular singer.
11. many (很多) : Have you got many friends in school?
12. none (一個也沒有) : 'Is there anyone here?' 'No, none at all.'
13. nobody (沒有人) : Nobody helps the injured man.
14. nothing (沒有甚麼) : I saw nothing.
15. no one (沒有人) : No one visits the poor old man.
16. one (一個) : You have two pens. Can you lend me one?
17. some (一些) : Will you have some cake?

## EXERCISE 25

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. This is the teacher  A. whom  B. which  C. who  D. whose we all pay attention to.
2. The digital camera  A. who  B. that  C. whom  D. whose he bought costs \$6000.

3. Mary has a brother       A. whom  
                                   B. who      is very clever.  
                                   C. whose  
                                   D. that
4. You may eat       A. who  
                                   B. what      you like.  
                                   C. that  
                                   D. which
5. This is the girl       A. who  
                                   B. whose      shirt is red and pretty.  
                                   C. which  
                                   D. whom
6. She is the prettiest girl       A. whom  
                                   B. whose      we have ever met.  
                                   C. who  
                                   D. which
7. There is the house       A. whose  
                                   B. whom      belongs to John.  
                                   C. who  
                                   D. that
8. Do you know the children       A. whose  
                                   B. whom      mother is a nurse?  
                                   C. who  
                                   D. which
9. I know the man       A. whose  
                                   B. who      has been to England.  
                                   C. whom  
                                   D. which
10. I only saw one snake in the box,       A. every  
                                   B. the other      had gone.  
                                   C. each  
                                   D. none

## ARTICLES (冠詞)

The adjectives "a / an" and "the" are called ARTICLES.  
(在形容詞中的 "a / an" 和 "the" 稱為冠詞。)

There are two kinds of Articles: 冠詞分兩類:

1. Indefinite Article 「不定冠詞」 — 即 "a" / "an".
2. Definite Article 「固定冠詞」 — 即 "the".

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE — "a / an" (不定冠詞)

e.g. I have **a** book.  
That is **an** umbrella.  
I am going to see **a** picture this afternoon.

In the examples above, each bold typed article does not refer to a particular thing. It is indefinite. In the first sentence, the word "book" is possible to be any book or any kind of book.

在上述例句中，黑體字 'a / an' 並不表示一種特別的東西，是「不定冠詞」。如第一句 'a' 表示的 'book'，它可表示任何一本書或一類書。

1. "a" is used before a noun beginning with a consonant sound:-  
'a' 放在第一個字的字母是子音 (啞音) 的字之前。

e.g. **a** book      **a** woman  
**a** bag      **a** tiger  
**a** boy      **all of a** sudden  
**a** cat      **as a** rule  
**a** cup      **a** summer evening  
**a** dog

#### EXCEPTIONS:

**a** useful stick      **a** university  
**a** uniform      **a** union  
**a** European girl  
**a** one-eyed man  
**a** one hundred dollar note

2. "an" is used before a noun beginning with a vowel sound (a,e,i,o,u):-  
'an' 放在第一個字的字母是母音 (響音) (a,e,i,o,u) 之前。

e.g. **an** axe      **an** Englishman  
**an** aeroplane      **an** ox  
**an** elephant      **an** orange  
**an** egg      **an** up-to-date hat  
**an** ice cream      **an** autumn evening

#### EXCEPTIONS:

**an** hour  
**an** honest man  
**an** heir

3. "a" is used instead of "an" when the word begins with a vowel but is actually a consonant sound or when a particular member of a group is referred.

名詞的第一個字母雖然是母音(響音)但發音的是子音(啞音)或用來表示一種特別的羣體，便使用 "a"。

e.g. **a** European girl      **a** one-eyed man      **a** one hundred dollar note  
**a** uniform      **a** useful stick      **a** union  
**a** university      **a** humble home

## EXERCISE 26

Fill in each blank with "a" or "an".

1. He wants to write \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
2. My father is \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.
3. The old man had \_\_\_\_\_ English book.
4. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ new book.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ apple \_\_\_\_\_ day keeps the doctor away.
6. This grammar book is \_\_\_\_\_ useful learning aid.
7. He uses \_\_\_\_\_ axe to cut \_\_\_\_\_ tree.
8. Every soldier has \_\_\_\_\_ uniform.
9. Mr. Watson is \_\_\_\_\_ unskilled worker.
10. Chinese is not \_\_\_\_\_ easy language.

### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE — "the" (固定冠詞)

"The" is used before a noun. It shows that noun is a particular or definite person or thing.

'The' 是「固定冠詞」用在名詞之前。它表示這名詞是一種特別或指定的人物或東西。

1. "The" is used:-

'The' 用在：

- a. Before nouns in a particular sense.

用在名詞之前，表示有特別的意思。

e.g. 1. This is the school that Mary goes to.

2. I like the English teacher in that education centre.

- b. Before nouns standing for a whole group.

用在名詞之前，表示全體的意思。

e.g. 1. The lion is a wild animal.

2. The cow is a useful animal.

## ARTICLES (冠詞)

The adjectives "a / an" and "the" are called ARTICLES.  
(在形容詞中的 "a / an" 和 "the" 稱為冠詞。)

There are two kinds of Articles: 冠詞分兩類:

1. Indefinite Article 「不定冠詞」 — 即 "a" / "an".
2. Definite Article 「固定冠詞」 — 即 "the".

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE — "a / an" (不定冠詞)

e.g. I have **a** book.  
That is **an** umbrella.  
I am going to see **a** picture this afternoon.

In the examples above, each bold typed article does not refer to a particular thing. It is indefinite. In the first sentence, the word "book" is possible to be any book or any kind of book.

在上述例句中，黑體字 'a / an' 並不表示一種特別的東西，是「不定冠詞」。如第一句 'a' 表示的 'book'，它可表示任何一本書或一類書。

1. "a" is used before a noun beginning with a consonant sound:-  
'a' 放在第一個字的字母是子音 (啞音) 的字之前。

e.g. **a** book      **a** woman  
**a** bag      **a** tiger  
**a** boy      all of a sudden  
**a** cat      as a rule  
**a** cup      a summer evening  
**a** dog

**EXCEPTIONS:**  
**a** useful stick      **a** university  
**a** uniform      **a** union  
**a** European girl  
**a** one-eyed man  
**a** one hundred dollar note

2. "an" is used before a noun beginning with a vowel sound (a,e,i,o,u):-  
'an' 放在第一個字的字母是母音 (響音) (a,e,i,o,u) 之前。

e.g. **an** axe      **an** Englishman  
**an** aeroplane      **an** ox  
**an** elephant      **an** orange  
**an** egg      **an** up-to-date hat  
**an** ice cream      **an** autumn evening

**EXCEPTIONS:**  
**an** hour  
**an** honest man  
**an** heir

3. "a" is used instead of "an" when the word begins with a vowel but is actually a consonant sound or when a particular member of a group is referred.

名詞的第一個字母雖然是母音 (響音) 但發音的是子音 (啞音) 或用來表示一種特別的羣體，便使用 "a"。

e.g. **a** European girl      **a** one-eyed man      **a** one hundred dollar note  
**a** uniform      **a** useful stick      **a** union  
**a** university      **a** humble home

## EXERCISE 26

Fill in each blank with "a" or "an".

1. He wants to write \_\_\_\_\_ letter.
2. My father is \_\_\_\_\_ honest man.
3. The old man had \_\_\_\_\_ English book.
4. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ new book.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ apple \_\_\_\_\_ day keeps the doctor away.
6. This grammar book is \_\_\_\_\_ useful learning aid.
7. He uses \_\_\_\_\_ axe to cut \_\_\_\_\_ tree.
8. Every soldier has \_\_\_\_\_ uniform.
9. Mr. Watson is \_\_\_\_\_ unskilled worker.
10. Chinese is not \_\_\_\_\_ easy language.

### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE — "the" (固定冠詞)

"The" is used before a noun. It shows that noun is a particular or definite person or thing.

'The' 是「固定冠詞」用在名詞之前。它表示這名詞是一種特別或指定的人物或東西。

#### 1. "The" is used:-

'The' 用在：

##### a. Before nouns in a particular sense.

用在名詞之前，表示有特別的意思。

e.g. 1. This is the school that Mary goes to.

2. I like the English teacher in that education centre.

##### b. Before nouns standing for a whole group.

用在名詞之前，表示全體的意思。

e.g. 1. The lion is a wild animal.

2. The cow is a useful animal.

c. Before an adjective when the noun is understood.

用在省去名詞的形容詞之前。

e.g. 1. Only the brave deserve the reward.

2. The poor are happier than the rich.

d. Before the geographical names of rivers, canals, seas, oceans, groups of islands and mountains chains.

用在河流、運河、海、海洋、島嶼和山脈的地理名稱之前。

e.g.	<u>the</u> Red Sea	<u>the</u> Hong Kong Island
	<u>the</u> Indian Ocean	<u>the</u> Suez Canal
	<u>the</u> British Isles	<u>the</u> Alps

e. Before common nouns that are the only ones.

用在普通名詞之前，表示它們是獨有的。

e.g.	<u>the</u> sun	<u>the</u> east
	<u>the</u> world	<u>the</u> north-west
	<u>the</u> moon	<u>the</u> equator
	<u>the</u> sky	<u>the</u> left
	<u>the</u> earth	<u>the</u> right

f. Before superlative adjectives.

用在最高比較級之前。

e.g. 1. He is the tallest boy in class.

2. Ice tea is one of the best drinks in summer time.

g. Before the names of buildings and books .

用在建築物和書名之前。

e.g.	1. <u>The</u> City Hall
	2. <u>The</u> Bible
	3. <u>The</u> Chi Lin Nunnery (志蓮淨苑)
	4. <u>The</u> Harry Potter series

2. **No Article** should be used in the following cases:-

在下列情形下，不應用冠詞。

a. Before proper nouns. 在專有名詞之前。

- e.g. 1. Mary is Mrs. Lee's daughter.  
2. London is the capital of England.

b. Before common nouns used in a general sense.

用在那些有全面意思的普通名詞之前。

- e.g. 1. Tigers and lions are wild animals.  
2. What kind of fruit is that?

c. Before material and abstract nouns used in general.

用在那些有慣常用的物質名詞和抽象名詞之前。

- e.g. 1. Our house is built of stone.  
2. Honesty is the best policy.

d. Before nouns which are preceded by a possessive or certain other adjectives.

用在名詞之前，而該名詞又有指示形容詞或某些形容詞在前面的。

- e.g. 1. Mary is her sister.

e. In certain phrases. 在某些片語中。

- |      |                 |                         |
|------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| e.g. | 1. above ground | 13. in peace            |
|      | 2. at home      | 14. in town             |
|      | 3. at night     | 15. on earth            |
|      | 4. at noon      | 16. on foot             |
|      | 5. at school    | 17. on horseback        |
|      | 6. at sunrise   | 18. to catch fire       |
|      | 7. by land      | 19. to leave school     |
|      | 8. by night     | 20. to set sail         |
|      | 9. by ship      | 21. to shake hands with |
|      | 10. by tram     | 22. to take dinner      |
|      | 11. by train    | 23. under ground        |
|      | 12. in bed      |                         |

## EXERCISE 27

*Fill in the blanks with proper articles.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ aeroplane landed safely ten minutes ago.
2. The ship lost \_\_\_\_\_ anchor in \_\_\_\_\_ storm.
3. She was trying to find \_\_\_\_\_ green book.
4. I have \_\_\_\_\_ white cat and \_\_\_\_\_ black dog.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ round-the-world cruise was full of interest.
6. This is \_\_\_\_\_ nice place because we can watch \_\_\_\_\_ activities on \_\_\_\_\_ water.
7. It is impossible for us to touch \_\_\_\_\_ moon.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ sun rises in \_\_\_\_\_ morning.
9. We found \_\_\_\_\_ elephant in \_\_\_\_\_ jungle.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ rolling stone gathers no moss.
11. She is \_\_\_\_\_ hard-working girl.
12. Hearing \_\_\_\_\_ noise, \_\_\_\_\_ boys woke up.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ hour ago, I saw you running to school.
14. He wishes to study in \_\_\_\_\_ university in Australia.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ ship will set sail for Japan in \_\_\_\_\_ few days.
16. While I was in London I visited \_\_\_\_\_ Tower and \_\_\_\_\_ Westminster Abbey.
17. She has failed in \_\_\_\_\_ examination three times.
18. We had \_\_\_\_\_ examination yesterday.
19. I am in \_\_\_\_\_ hurry.
20. I have \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to go to New York.

## EXERCISE 28

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. The widow has  A. an  B. the  C. some  D. a lot of money.
2. Mr. Chan has waited in the airport for  A. a  B. the  C. any  D. an hour.
3. Tea is  A. the  B. some best drink for hot weather.  C. an  D. a
4. After  A. an  B. some few minutes we reached the station.  C. the  D. a
5. Mother goes to the market twice  A. an  B. a  C. the week.  D. any
6. He liked  A. some  B. a  C. the book you gave him.  D. an
7. Tom is studying in  A. the  B. some  C. an University of Hong Kong.  D. a
8. There is  A. some  B. a  C. an elephant in the park.  D. the

## ADJECTIVES (形容詞)

An ADJECTIVE is a word that tells us more about a noun.

「形容詞」是用來形容名詞的字。

- e.g. 1. I am a good boy.  
2. There are many games in my mobile phone.  
3. This laptop computer is my cousin's.  
4. All students are required to attend the assembly.



There are six kinds of Adjective:- 形容詞有六種。

### 1. Adjective of Quality (品質形容詞)

An Adjective of Quality tells us what kind a person or thing is.

「品質形容詞」用來表示人或物特質的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. He is a tall man.  
2. A happy mother is feeding her healthy baby.  
3. Hong Kong is a clean city.

### 2. Adjective of Quantity (分量形容詞)

An Adjective of Quantity tells us how much a person or thing has.

「分量形容詞」用來表示人或物分量有多少的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. He does not need much water to water the cactus.  
2. My sister ate little food when she was young.  
3. She has enough money to buy this new coat.

### 3. Adjective of Number (數目形容詞)

An Adjective of Number tells us how many persons or things there are.

「數目形容詞」用來表示人或物的數目有多少的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. There are seven days in a week.  
2. Ten men came yesterday.  
3. Monday is the second day of the week.

#### 4. Demonstrative Adjective (指示形容詞)

A Demonstrative Adjective points out the person or thing that is spoken about. 「指示形容詞」是用來指示所說及的人或物件的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. I do not believe such silly answer.  
2. This tree is thicker than that.  
3. These pencils belong to me.

#### 5. Possessive Adjective (物主形容詞)

A Possessive Adjective is used to show the ownership of something.

「物主形容詞」是用來表示人或物件所擁有的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. I lost my book last week.  
2. Our teacher is kind to us.  
3. Your face looks pale.

#### 6. Interrogative Adjective (疑問形容詞)

An Interrogative Adjective is used to ask a question.

「疑問形容詞」是用來發問問題的形容詞。

- e.g. 1. Whose ruler is this?  
2. What kind of a woman is she?  
3. Which pupil comes first?

### EXERCISE 29

Underline the adjective in each of the following sentences and name its kind. Write the letter in the brackets provided.

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. Adjective of Quality  | D. Demonstrative Adjective |
| B. Adjective of Quantity | E. Interrogative Adjective |
| C. Adjective of Number   | F. Possessive Adjective    |

- |                                    |        |
|------------------------------------|--------|
| 1. He is a naughty boy.            | 1. ( ) |
| 2. He has finished his homework.   | 2. ( ) |
| 3. Don't kill that cat!            | 3. ( ) |
| 4. Compare the first two chapters. | 4. ( ) |
| 5. She has many friends.           | 5. ( ) |
| 6. What kind of job do you want?   | 6. ( ) |
| 7. I want to buy this bag.         | 7. ( ) |

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 8. She visits her uncle every week.     | 8. ( )  |
| 9. Whose shirt is this?                 | 9. ( )  |
| 10. Manchester United is a strong team. | 10. ( ) |

## EXERCISE 30

Put a mark 'A' in each of the sentences below to show where the adjective should be.

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1. OLD:       | The woman has four sons.                   |
| 2. STRONG:    | The wind blows from the North.             |
| 3. ALL:       | She has lost her books.                    |
| 4. DANGEROUS: | They were in a place.                      |
| 5. ANY:       | He has not books in his bag.               |
| 6. HEAVY:     | The lorry is carrying a load.              |
| 7. FEW:       | persons could complete the Sudoku contest. |
| 8. DEEP:      | The boat sails down the river.             |

### ■ Comparison of Adjectives (形容詞的程度比較)

Read the following sentences:-

1. John's book is as thick as Paul's.
2. Mary's book is thicker than John's.
3. Tom's book is the thickest of all.

Adjectives change in form ( thick, thicker and the thickest) to show the Three Degrees of Comparison. 'Thick' is the Positive Degree, 'thicker' is the Comparative Degree, and the 'thickest' is the Superlative Degree.

在上面的例子，我們認識(厚)(thick)的三種比較程度。'thick' (厚)稱「原級」，'thicker' (厚些)稱「比較級」，'the thickest' (最厚)稱「最高級」。

### ■ Formation of Comparative and Superlative Degree of Adjectives ('比較級'和'最高級'形容詞的形成)

1. Most adjectives form the Comparative by adding "-er" or the Superlative by adding 'the' and '-est' to the Positive.
- 有很多形容詞只在原級字後加上'er'便成為「比較級」或在原級字後加上'the'和'est'便成為「最高級」。

Positive 原級	Comparative 比較級	Superlative 最高級
bold (大膽的)	bolder	the boldest
bright (光明的)	brighter	the brightest
broad (廣闊的)	broader	the broadest
cheap (便宜的)	cheaper	the cheapest
clean (清潔的)	cleaner	the cleanest
clear (清楚的)	clearer	the clearest
clever (聰明的)	cleverer	the cleverest
cold (冷的)	colder	the coldest
cool (涼的)	cooler	the coolest
dark (黑暗的)	darker	the darkest
dear (貴的)	dearer	the dearest
deep (深的)	deeper	the deepest
dull (陰沉的)	duller	the dullest
fast (快的)	faster	the fastest
fair (公平的)	fairer	the fairest
fresh (新鮮的)	fresher	the freshest
great (偉大的)	greater	the greatest
hard (硬的)	harder	the hardest
high (高的)	higher	the highest
kind (仁慈的)	kinder	the kindest
light (輕的)	lighter	the lightest
long (長的)	longer	the longest
loud (大聲的)	louder	the loudest
low (低的)	lower	the lowest
new (新的)	newer	the newest
narrow (窄的)	narrower	the narrowest
near (近的)	nearer	the nearest
old (老的)	older	the oldest
poor (窮的)	poorer	the poorest
quick (快的)	quicker	the quickest
quiet (靜的)	quieter	the quietest
rich (富有的)	richer	the richest
short (短的)	shorter	the shortest
slow (慢的)	slower	the slowest
small (細小的)	smaller	the smallest

Positive 原級		Comparative 比較級	Superlative 最高級
strong	(強壯的)	stronger	the strongest
sweet	(甜的)	sweeter	the sweetest
straight	(直的)	straighter	the straightest
tall	(高的)	taller	the tallest
thick	(厚的)	thicker	the thickest
tight	(緊的)	tighter	the tightest
warm	(溫暖的)	warmer	the warmest
weak	(弱的)	weaker	the weakest
young	(年青的)	younger	the youngest

2. When a Positive ends in "-e", "-r", "the" and "-st" are added to form the Comparative and Superlative.

當原級字的最尾字母是 '-e' 時，加上 '-r' 或 'the' 和 '-st' 便成比較級和最高級。

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
able	(能幹的)	abler
brave	(勇敢的)	braver
close	(接近的)	closer
fine	(美好的)	finer
gentle	(優雅的)	gentler
humble	(謙虛的)	humbler
idle	(懶散的)	idler
late	(遲的)	later
large	(大的)	larger
loose	(鬆的)	looser
nice	(好的)	nicer
noble	(高貴的)	nobler
pale	(蒼白的)	paler
ripe	(成熟的)	riper
rude	(無禮的)	ruder
safe	(安全的)	safer
simple	(簡易的)	simpler
strange	(奇異的)	stranger
true	(真實的)	truer
white	(白色的)	whiter
wide	(闊的)	wider
wise	(聰明的)	wiser

3. If the Positive ends in "-y" preceded by a consonant, the "-y" is changed into "-i" before adding "-er" or "the" and "-est".

當原級字的最後字母是 '-y'，而 '-y' 字母前是子音字母，只將 '-y' 改寫 'i'，再將 '-er' 或 'the' and '-est' 加在 '-i' 字母後便成為「比較級」和「最高級」。

<u>Positive</u>		<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
busy	(忙碌的)	busier	the busiest
dirty	(髒的)	dirtier	the dirtiest
dry	(乾的)	drier	the driest
early	(早的)	earlier	the earliest
easy	(容易的)	easier	the easiest
greedy	(貪心的)	greedier	the greediest
happy	(快樂的)	happier	the happiest
heavy	(重的)	heavier	the heaviest
hungry	(餓的)	hungrier	the hungriest
lazy	(懶惰的)	lazier	the laziest
lucky	(幸運的)	luckier	the luckiest
noisy	(嘈吵的)	noisier	the noisiest
pretty	(美麗的)	prettier	the prettiest
tasty	(美味的)	tastier	the tastiest
thirsty	(口渴的)	thirstier	the thirstiest
tidy	(整齊的)	tidier	the tidiest
ugly	(醜陋的)	uglier	the ugliest
wealthy	(富有的)	wealthier	the wealthiest

4. If the Positive ends in one syllable preceded by a vowel, double the final consonant, add "-er" to form the Comparative or "the" and "-est" to form the Superlative.

當原級是單音節的字，以子音字母結尾，而子音前面是母音，那便要多寫一個子音字母，及在字後加上 '-er' 成比較級或加上 'the' 和 '-est' 成最高級。

<u>Positive</u>		<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
big	(大的)	bigger	the biggest
fat	(肥的)	fatter	the fattest
flat	(平坦的)	flatter	the flattest
hot	(熱的)	hotter	the hottest
mad	(瘋的)	madder	the maddest
red	(紅的)	redder	the reddest
sad	(憂愁的)	sadder	the saddest
thin	(瘦的)	thinner	the thinnest
wet	(濕的)	wetter	the wettest

5. If the Adjective consists of two or more syllables that doesn't end in "y", the Comparative and Superlative are formed by using "more" and "the most" before the Positive.

當一個原級的形容詞有超過兩個音節時，在該字前加 'more' 或 'the most' 便可將它變成「比較級」和「最高級」。

<u>Positive</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
afraid (害怕的)	more afraid	the most afraid
agreeable (適合的)	more agreeable	the most agreeable
beautiful (美麗的)	more beautiful	the most beautiful
careful (小心的)	more careful	the most careful
careless (不小心的)	more careless	the most careless
changeable (易變的)	more changeable	the most changeable
cheerful (高興的)	more cheerful	the most cheerful
comfortable (舒適的)	more comfortable	the most comfortable
dangerous (危險的)	more dangerous	the most dangerous
delicious (好味的)	more delicious	the most delicious
difficult (困難的)	more difficult	the most difficult
diligent (勤力的)	more diligent	the most diligent
enjoyable (令人愉快的)	more enjoyable	the most enjoyable
exciting (令人興奮的)	more exciting	the most exciting
excited (興奮的)	more excited	the most excited
famous (著名的)	more famous	the most famous
forgetful (健忘的)	more forgetful	the most forgetful
foolish (愚笨的)	more foolish	the most foolish
generous (慷慨的)	more generous	the most generous
grateful (感恩的)	more grateful	the most grateful
helpful (有幫助的)	more helpful	the most helpful
honest (誠實的)	more honest	the most honest
important (重要的)	more important	the most important
interesting (有趣的)	more interesting	the most interesting
necessary (需要的)	more necessary	the most necessary
obedient (服從的)	more obedient	the most obedient
painful (痛苦的)	more painful	the most painful
pleasant (可喜的)	more pleasant	the most pleasant
polite (有禮貌的)	more polite	the most polite
serious (嚴肅的)	more serious	the most serious
silent (寂靜的)	more silent	the most silent
similar (類似的)	more similar	the most similar
surprised (詫異的)	more surprised	the most surprised
tasteless (無味的)	more tasteless	the most tasteless

tired	(疲乏的)	more tired	the most tired
useful	(有用的)	more useful	the most useful
valuable	(有價值的)	more valuable	the most valuable
wonderful	(驚奇的)	more wonderful	the most wonderful

6. Irregular Comparison:  
(不規則的比較程度形容詞)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bad	(壞的)	worse
evil	(惡的)	worse
far	(遠的)	farther(further)
good	(好的)	better
ill	(病的)	worse
little	(小的)	less
many	(多的)	more
much	(多的)	more

## EXERCISE 31

Write down the comparative and superlative adjectives.

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1.	bad		the
2.	wide		the
3.	angry		
4.	wet		
5.	comfortable		
6.	young		
7.	little		
8.	noisy		
9.	polite		
10.	cheap		

## EXERCISE 32

*Fill in each blank with the correct form of adjective given in brackets.*

1. Peter is the \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) boy in class.
2. A lion is \_\_\_\_\_ (strong) than a hundred mice.
3. Her doll is \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty) than mine.
4. Your pencil is sharp but mine is \_\_\_\_\_ (sharp) .
5. Which do you like \_\_\_\_\_ (well) , tea or coffee?
6. Health is \_\_\_\_\_ (important) than wealth.
7. Tom has \_\_\_\_\_ (much) money than I.
8. She is the \_\_\_\_\_ (good) friend I have ever had.
9. Many students find playing computer games \_\_\_\_\_ (excite) than reading books.
10. August is usually the \_\_\_\_\_ (hot) month in Hong Kong.

## EXERCISE 33

*Fill in each blank with the correct possessive adjective.*

1. The shop assistant stared at the children and said, "Put \_\_\_\_\_ bags on the shelf before you enter."
2. We can't tell you \_\_\_\_\_ plan now. It's not yet time.
3. My parents have gone to Japan to celebrate \_\_\_\_\_ wedding anniversary.
4. The dog barked excitedly when \_\_\_\_\_ master appeared.
5. The couple had \_\_\_\_\_ wedding photo framed.

## VERBS (動詞)

A VERB is used to tell what the noun (person or thing) does.

「動詞」是用來講述名詞（人或物）所做的動作。

- e.g. 1. Tom catches a fish.  
 2. The boy kicks the ball.  
 3. The children are happy.

### A THE FOUR PARTS OF VERBS (動詞的四部分)

Every Verb has four parts, namely: The Present Tense, The Present Participle, The Past Tense, and The Past Participle.

每個「動詞」都有四部分，那是：現在式、現在分詞、過去式和過去分詞。

e.g.

	Present Tense (現在式)	Present Participle (現在分詞)	Past Tense (過去式)	Past Participle (過去分詞)
1.	help	helping	helped	helped
2.	run	running	ran	run

For the Future Tense — it is formed by adding a helping verb (shall, or will) before the verb.

要把動詞表示為未來時態，可在動詞前加上助動詞 'shall' 或 'will' 便可。

- e.g. 1. I shall help.  
 2. We shall arrive in time.  
 3. He will attend their wedding.

1. Verbs having the same form for the present, the past and the past participle.

現在式、過去式和過去分詞三個字都是相同的動詞。

Present	Present Participle	Past	Past Participle
cost (價值)	costing	cost	cost
cut (割)	cutting	cut	cut

hit	(打)	hitting	hit	hit
hurt	(傷害)	hurting	hurt	hurt
put	(放置)	putting	put	put
read	(閱讀)	reading	read	read
set	(安放)	setting	set	set
shut	(關閉)	shutting	shut	shut
spread	(傳播)	spreading	spread	spread

## 2. Verbs having the same form for the past and the past participle.

過去式和過去分詞二個字都是相同的動詞。

Present	Present Participle	Past	Past Participle
accept	(接受)	accepting	accepted
act	(扮演)	acting	acted
add	(加)	adding	added
agree	(同意)	agreeing	agreed
allow	(允許)	allowing	allowed
answer	(回答)	answering	answered
ask	(問)	asking	asked
awake	(喚醒)	awaking	awoke
bake	(烘)	baking	baked
bark	(吠)	barking	barked
bathe	(沐浴)	bathing	bathed
beg	(請求)	begging	begged
believe	(相信)	believing	believed
bend	(屈曲)	bending	bent
bind	(縛綑)	binding	bound
bleed	(流血)	bleeding	bled
boil	(煮沸)	boiling	boiled
borrow	(借)	borrowing	borrowed
breathe	(呼吸)	breathing	breathed
bring	(攜帶)	bringing	brought
brush	(刷)	brushing	brushed
build	(建築)	building	built
burn	(燃燒)	burning	burnt
buy	(買)	buying	bought
call	(叫)	calling	called
carry	(攜帶)	carrying	carried

catch	(捉)	catching	caught	caught
clap	(拍掌)	clapping	clapped	clapped
climb	(攀)	climbing	climbed	climbed
close	(關閉)	closing	closed	closed
collect	(收集)	collecting	collected	collected
complete	(完成)	completing	completed	completed
continue	(繼續)	continuing	continued	continued
copy	(抄寫)	copying	copied	copied
correct	(改正)	correcting	corrected	corrected
count	(計算)	counting	counted	counted
cover	(蓋上)	covering	covered	covered
cross	(橫過)	crossing	crossed	crossed
cry	(哭)	crying	cried	cried
cycle	(踏單車)	cycling	cycled	cycled
die	(死亡)	dying	died	died
dig	(掘)	digging	dug	dug
direct	(指揮)	directing	directed	directed
disappear	(失蹤)	disappearing	disappeared	disappeared
dive	(潛水)	diving	dived	dived
drop	(落下)	dropping	dropped	dropped
dry	(使乾)	drying	dried	dried
empty	(使空)	emptying	emptied	emptied
enjoy	(欣賞)	enjoying	enjoyed	enjoyed
enter	(進入)	entering	entered	entered
examine	(檢查)	examining	examined	examined
excuse	(寬恕)	excusing	excused	excused
explain	(說明)	explaining	explained	explained
face	(面對)	facing	faced	faced
fail	(失敗)	fails	failed	failed
feed	(餵)	feeding	fed	fed
feel	(感覺)	feeling	felt	felt
fetch	(取)	fetching	fetched	fetched
fight	(戰鬥)	fighting	fought	fought
find	(找尋)	finding	found	found
fine	(罰金)	fining	fined	fined
flow	(流動)	flowing	flowed	flowed
follow	(跟隨)	following	followed	followed

free	(釋放)	freeing	freed	freed
gather	(採集)	gathering	gathered	gathered
get	(取)	getting	got	got
govern	(統治)	governing	governed	governed
grind	(磨硞)	grinding	ground	ground
hang	(掛)	hanging	hung	hung
hate	(憎惡)	hating	hated	hated
have, has	(有)	having	had	had
hear	(聽)	hearing	heard	heard
help	(幫助)	helping	helped	helped
hold	(持)	holding	held	held
hop	(跳)	hopping	hopped	hopped
hope	(希望)	hoping	hoped	hoped
hunt	(狩獵)	hunting	hunted	hunted
invite	(邀請)	inviting	invited	invited
join	(參加)	joining	joined	joined
jump	(跳)	jumping	jumped	jumped
keep	(保持)	keeping	kept	kept
kill	(殺)	killing	killed	killed
kneel	(跪)	kneeling	knelt	knelt
knit	(編織)	knitting	knitted	knitted
lay	(放置)	laying	laid	laid
lead	(領導)	leading	led	led
leap	(跳)	leaping	leaped (leapt)	leaped (leapt)
learn	(學習)	learning	learnt	learnt
leave	(離開)	leaving	left	left
lend	(借出)	lending	lent	lent
lie	(說謊)	lying	lied	lied
light	(點火)	lighting	lit (lighted)	lit (lighted)
like	(喜歡)	liking	liked	liked
live	(居住)	living	lived	lived
look	(看)	looking	looked	looked
lose	(失去)	losing	lost	lost
love	(愛)	loving	loved	loved
march	(行軍)	marching	marched	marched

marry	(結婚)	marrying	married	married
mean	(意思)	meaning	meant	meant
meet	(遇見)	meeting	met	met
mend	(修補)	mending	mended	mended
move	(移動)	moving	moved	moved
name	(命名)	naming	named	named
need	(需要)	needing	needed	needed
obey	(服從)	obeying	obeyed	obeyed
open	(打開)	opening	opened	opened
paint	(繪畫)	painting	painted	painted
pay	(支付)	paying	paid	paid
pick	(採摘)	picking	picked	picked
pin	(釘住)	pinning	pinned	pinned
plough	(犁田)	ploughing	ploughed	ploughed
pull	(拉)	pulling	pulled	pulled
push	(推)	pushing	pushed	pushed
quarrel	(爭吵)	quarrelling	quarrelled	quarrelled
question	(質問)	questioning	questioned	questioned
race	(競走)	racing	raced	raced
reach	(到達)	reaching	reached	reached
roll	(滾)	rolling	rolled	rolled
rub	(摩擦)	rubbing	rubbed	rubbed
rule	(統治)	ruling	ruled	ruled
sail	(航行)	sailing	sailed	sailed
save	(救援)	saving	saved	saved
say	(說)	saying	said	said
seek	(找尋)	seeking	sought	sought
sell	(賣出)	selling	sold	sold
send	(寄送)	sending	sent	sent
share	(分配)	sharing	shared	shared
shine	(照耀)	shining	shone	shone
shoot	(射擊)	shooting	shot	shot
shout	(叫喊)	shouting	shouted	shouted
sit	(坐)	sitting	sat	sat
sleep	(睡)	sleeping	slept	slept
slip	(滑跌)	slipping	slipped	slipped
smell	(嗅)	smelling	smelt	smelt
spell	(拼字)	spelling	spelt	spelt

spend	(消耗)	spending	spent	spent
spit	(吐痰)	spitting	spat	spat
spoil	(寵壞)	spoiling	spoiled (spoilt)	spoiled (spoilt)
stand	(站立)	standing	stood	stood
step	(踏)	stepping	stepped	stepped
stick	(黏)	sticking	stuck	stuck
stop	(停止)	stopping	stopped	stopped
strike	(擊)	striking	struck	struck
string	(綑縛)	stringing	strung	strung
study	(學習)	studying	studied	studied
sweep	(打掃)	sweeping	swept	swept
taste	(嚐味)	tasting	tasted	tasted
teach	(教)	teaching	taught	taught
tell	(講)	telling	told	told
think	(想)	thinking	thought	thought
tie	(綁)	tying	tied	tied
trust	(信任)	trusting	trusted	trusted
try	(嘗試)	trying	tried	tried
understand	(明白)	understanding	understood	understood
untie	(解開)	unting	untied	untied
visit	(拜訪)	visiting	visited	visited
wait	(等待)	waiting	waited	waited
wake	(醒覺)	waking	woke	woke
watch	(看守)	watching	watched	watched
weep	(哭泣)	weeping	wept	wept
win	(獲勝)	winning	won	won
wind	(繞，扭)	winding	wound	wound
work	(工作)	working	worked	worked

3. Verbs having three different forms for the present, the past and the past participle.

現在式、過去式、過去分詞三個字都是不相同的動詞。

	Present Participle	Past	Past Participle
be(am, is, are, was, were) (是)	being	was(were)	been
bear (忍受)	bearing	bore	born(borne)
beat (打)	beating	beat	beaten

become	(變成)	becoming	became	become
begin	(開始)	beginning	began	begun
bite	(咬)	biting	bit	bitten
blow	(吹)	blowing	blew	blown
break	(破)	breaking	broke	broken
choose	(選擇)	choosing	chose	chosen
come	(來)	coming	came	come
do	(做)	doing	did	done
draw	(畫, 抽出)	drawing	drew	drawn
drink	(飲)	drinking	drank	drunk
drive	(駕駛)	driving	drove	driven
eat	(食)	eating	ate	eaten
fall	(跌下)	falling	fell	fallen
fly	(飛)	flying	flew	flown
forget	(忘記)	forgetting	forgot	forgotten
forgive	(寬恕)	forgiving	forgave	forgiven
freeze	(結冰)	freezing	froze	frozen
give	(給)	giving	gave	given
go	(去)	going	went	gone
grow	(生長)	growing	grew	grown
hide	(躲藏)	hiding	hid	hidden
know	(知道)	knowing	knew	known
lie	(躺下)	lying	lay	lain
mistake	(誤解)	mistaking	mistook	mistaken
ride	(跨)	riding	rode	ridden
ring	(響鐘)	ringing	rang	rung
rise	(上升)	rising	rose	risen
run	(走)	running	ran	run
see	(看)	seeing	saw	seen
sew	(縫紉)	sewing	sewed	sewn
shake	(擴, 震)	shaking	shook	shaken
shrink	(收縮)	shrinking	shrank	shrunk
show	(表示)	showing	showed	shown
sing	(歌唱)	singing	sang	sung
sink	(沉沒)	sinking	sank	sunk
sow	(播種)	sowing	sowed	sown
speak	(說)	speaking	spoke	spoken
spring	(跳)	springing	sprang	sprung

steal	(偷)	stealing	stole	stolen
swear	(發誓)	swearing	swore	sworn
swim	(游泳)	swimming	swam	swum
take	(取)	taking	took	taken
tear	(撕裂)	tearing	tore	torn
throw	(投擲)	throwing	threw	thrown
wear	(穿着)	wearing	wore	worn
write	(寫)	writing	wrote	written

## EXERCISE 34

*Write down the other parts of each of the verbs below. The first one is an example.*

	<u>Present</u>	<u>Present Participle</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
1.	go	going	went	gone
2.	cry			
3.	ride			
4.	shoot			
5.	shake			
6.	do			
7.	carry			
8.	speak			
9.	tie			
10.	bring			
11.	flow			
12.	slip			
13.	breathe			
14.	hide			
15.	spread			
16.	fall			
17.	hop			
18.	weep			
19.	shine			
20.	fight			
21.	pay			
22.	awake			
23.	bite			

24.	hurt			
25.	stop			
26.	write			
27.	drink			
28.	swear			
29.	freeze			
30.	see			

**B**

## THE THREE KINDS OF VERB (動詞的種類有三種)

1. Transitive verb (及物動詞)
2. Intransitive verb (不及物動詞)
3. Auxiliary verb (助動詞)

### 1. Transitive Verb:- (及物動詞)

A transitive verb shows the action of the 'doer' reaches the object.  
 「及物動詞」表示「行動者」的行動達到受詞上。

- e.g. 1. I bought a book.  
 2. She puts her hand on his head.  
 3. I give him a book.  
 4. They killed a fierce tiger.

### 2. Intransitive Verb:- (不及物動詞)

An intransitive verb shows the action of the 'doer' does not reach the object. 「不及物動詞」表示「行動者」的動作不能達到受詞上。

- e.g. 1. The bird sings.  
 2. I sit down.  
 3. He coughed badly.  
 4. The door squeaks a lot.

### 3. Auxiliary Verb:- (助動詞)

An auxiliary verb helps the principal verb by giving extra meaning to a sentence. It can be used to form a negative sense, or to emphasize its meaning.

「助動詞」用來提供主動詞額外的意義，它亦用來幫助主動詞組成否定語氣或加強語氣。

- e.g. 1. I may not know him.  
 2. I did not see him yesterday.  
 3. I do know him.

The following verbs are auxiliary verbs:

a. **Be** (be verb : am, is, are, was, were, been, being 的不定式)

1. As a principal verb (主要動詞)

- e.g. 1. He is a boy of fifteen.  
2. Peter and Tom are brothers.

2. As an auxiliary verb (助動詞)

- e.g. 1. I am not talking.  
2. The sun is shining.  
3. The children are playing.  
4. The tigers were killed by that brave hunter.

b. **Have, has (had)**

1. As a principal verb (主要動詞)

- e.g. 1. I have a horse.  
2. He has no money.

2. As an auxiliary verb (助動詞)

- e.g. 1. I have promised to help them.  
2. We have read that book twice.  
3. Has she finished reading her book?  
4. She had left before I arrived.

c. **Do, does (did)**

1. As a principal verb (主要動詞)

- e.g. 1. I do my work well.  
2. My sister does most of the work.

2. As an auxiliary verb (助動詞)

- e.g. 1. Do you feel unhappy?  
2. Does he like it?  
3. Did you remember to shut the door?  
(To help to form a question)  
4. I did not go to school yesterday.  
5. We do not trust him.  
6. He does not speak Chinese.  
(To help to form a negative)  
7. I did make the dress myself.  
8. She does like coffee.  
9. We do remember what he said.  
(To help to emphasize a statement)

#### d. Shall (should), Will (would)

1. 'Shall' and 'Will' help to form a future tense .

'Shall' and 'Will' 用來表示將來時態。

	Present Tense	Past Tense
First person (I, we)	shall	should
Second person (you)	will	would
Third person (he, she, it, they)	will	would

- e.g. 1. I shall learn to swim next week.  
2. We shall go to Macau tomorrow.  
3. They will arrive on time.  
4. You will lend him \$100.  
5. We hoped that she would arrive safely.  
6. He said that he would go.

Note: When 'shall' is used in the 2nd and 3rd person or 'will' is used in the 1st person, it is not an auxiliary verb. It expresses 'command', 'promise' or 'determination' etc.

- e.g. 1. I will lend him the money.  
2. You shall follow the doctor's advice.  
3. We will spend a holiday there.

2. 'Should' is used to express 'duty' or 'obligation'.

'Should' 用來表示應該要做的意思。

- e.g. 1. You should be careful walking in a dark street.  
2. I should help the poor.

3. 'Would' is used to express 'habit' or 'request'.

'Would' 用來表示習慣和請求的意思。

- e.g. 1. Would you like to go for a walk?  
2. They would go there every day.

#### e. May (might)

'May' or 'might' is used to express 'wish', 'purpose', 'permission' or 'possibility'.

'May' or 'might' 用來表示希望，目的，准許和可能的意思。

- e.g. 1. She may catch the train. (possibility)  
2. You may put your things here. (permission)  
3. We eat that we may live. (purpose)  
4. May I ask a question? (wish)

#### f. **Can (could)**

'Can' or 'could' is used as a verb to express 'ability' or 'permission'.

'Can (could)' 用來表示有能力或准許的意思。

- e.g. 1. My sister can bake a cake. (ability)  
2. He could do it. (ability)  
3. You can go now. (permission)  
4. She could take back her book if she wanted to. (permission)

#### g. **Must**

'Must' is used to express 'necessity', 'determination' or 'obligation'.

'Must' 用來表示有需要，果斷和應該的意思。

- e.g. 1. You must go at once. (necessity)  
2. I mustn't let her smoke again. (determination)  
3. Soldiers must obey orders. (obligation)

#### h. **Need**

'Need' is used to express 'want', 'requirement' or 'obligation'.

"Need" 用來表示希望，要求或應該的意思。

- e.g. 1. She needs a lot of money. (need + something)  
2. He needs to obey the law. (need+ to do something)  
3. You need to learn from him.  
4. You do not need to get changed.  
5. She does not need help.  
6. Do I need to log on?

#### i. **Ought to**

'Ought' is used with 'to' to express 'duty', 'obligation' or 'necessity'. It has the same form for different numbers or persons.

'Ought to' 用來表示應該要做的意思。單數和複數主詞都用 'ought to'.

- e.g. 1. Doctors ought to be kind to patients. (duty)  
2. We ought to obey the law. (obligation)  
3. You ought to leave at once. (necessity)  
4. You ought to have done that earlier. (past tense)

## EXERCISE 35

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. She  A. can  
 B. ought  
 C. must  
 D. should not to steal my watch.
2. My sister  A. should  
 B. can  
 C. could  
 D. would swim when she was six.
3. We  A. must  
 B. ought  
 C. can  
 D. need not go to school on Saturdays.
4. He  A. gone  
 B. go  
 C. will go  
 D. goes to school every morning.
5.  A. Would  
 B. Can you mind opening the door?  
 C. Must  
 D. Could
6. He  A. might  
 B. should  
 C. must  
 D. ought help us if we asked him.
7.  A. Need Lily wash  
 B. Need you to wash  
 C. Need you wash  
 D. Need she wash your hands before eating?

8. We  A. must  
 B. ought  
 C. have  
 D. might obey the law.
9. I  A. shall be able  
 B. can  
 C. could  
 D. should to buy a new bicycle if I have saved enough money.
10. The little boy  A. should  
 B. need  
 C. may  
 D. ought not climb that big tree.

## EXERCISE 36

*Choose the correct auxiliary verbs to complete the following sentences:*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (Does / Is / Has) she speak French?
2. Joseph and John \_\_\_\_\_ (have/are/do) twins.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (Do / Are / Have) you play on-line games?
4. Jennifer \_\_\_\_\_ (is/does/has) not like posting her pictures in her blog.
5. Harry Potter \_\_\_\_\_ (is / does / has) a lot of fans.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (is / do / am) not a computer idiot.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (Does / Is / Has) my mom gone to the market?
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have / are / do) asked to give a PowerPoint presentation on pollution in Hong Kong.

# THE TENSES OF VERBS (動詞的時態)

## A The Parts of Tenses:-

TENSE tells the verb form that shows the time. It is divided into three

1. PRESENT TENSE (現在式時態)	2. PAST TENSE (過去式時態)	3. FUTURE TENSE (未來式時態)
-----------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------------

Each of them has three different forms:-

1.	Present tense : — (現在式時態)	Simple Present Present Continuous Present Perfect	(簡單現在式時態) (現在進行式時態) (現在完成式時態)
2.	Past tense : — (過去式時態)	Simple Past Past Continuous Past Perfect	(簡單過去式時態) (過去進行式時態) (過去完成式時態)
3.	Future tense : — (未來式時態)	Simple future Future Continuous Future Perfect	(簡單未來式時態) (未來進行式時態) (未來完成式時態)

## B The Use of Tenses:-

### 1. The Simple Present Tense:- 「簡單現在式時態」的用法：

- a. To express a fact that is always true.

表示永遠都是真實的事理。

e.g. 1. The earth is round.  
2. The earth goes round the sun.

- b. To express a habit.

表示慣常的行為。

e.g. 1. I usually have my breakfast before I go to school.  
2. My aunt visits me every week.

- c. To express an action which is done regularly.

表示每日都做的動作。

e.g. 1. I get up at six in the morning.  
2. She goes to school by bus everyday.

Note: In the Simple Present Tense, if the subject of the sentence is third person singular, "-s" or "-es" should be added to the end of the verb.  
在「簡單現在式時態」中，如果主詞是表示第三人稱單數時，在動詞後加上 '-s' 或 '-es'。

- e.g. 1. He goes to school on foot.  
 2. She emails me daily.  
 3. I work very hard.  
 4. They go to school by MTR.

## 2. The uses of the Present Continuous Tense:-

「現在進行式時態」的用法：

- a. To express what is actually happening at the moment of speaking.  
 表示在說話時正在進行的動作。

- e.g. 1. I am doing my homework now.  
 2. What is he doing at present?

- b. To express what will happen in the future.

表示將會進行的動作。

- e.g. 1. I am going to see Mr. Chan tomorrow.  
 2. He is meeting his friends this evening.

## 3. The Present Perfect Tense:-

- a. It is used to express an action that began in the past (But no definite past time is mentioned) and has been finished at the time of speaking or is still continuing.

「現在完成式時態」用來表示一個在以前已經開始直至現在講話時才完成或會繼續進行下去的動作。

- e.g. 1. I have already written the letter.  
 2. The servant has just opened the window.  
 3. Miss Li has taught in this school for ten years.

- b. The Present Perfect Tense is usually used with words 'just', 'already', 'since', 'for', 'yet', etc.

「現在完成時態」時常與 'just', 'already', 'since', 'for', 'yet' 等一起應用。

## 4. The Simple Past Tense:-

It is used to express an action done in the past.

「簡單過去式時態」用以表示過去的動作。

- e.g. 1. I wrote a letter to John yesterday.  
 2. He went to Africa when he was thirty.

## 5. The Past Continuous Tense :-

It is used to show an action that was going on at a certain time in the past; mostly it is used when two actions happened at the same time.

「過去進行式時態」用來表示於過去某一時段內正在發生的動作。這時態主要用來表示兩種動作在同一時間進行。

- e.g. 1. When he came in, I was working on the computer.  
2. When I saw her, she was playing the piano.

## 6. The Past Perfect Tense:-

It is used to express an action that happened before another action at a certain time in the past. The Past Perfect Tense is used with the first past action and the Simple Past Tense is used with the latter past action.

「過去完成式時態」表示動作在過去某一段時間時間內已經完成。較先進行的動作用「過去完成時態」，而較後進行的動作用「簡單過去時態」。

- e.g. 1. I had downloaded a game before I went to bed.  
2. After the dentist had removed her tooth, she felt much better.

## 7. The Simple Future Tense:-

- a. It is used to express an action which is going to happen.

「簡單未來式時態」用來表示將來進行的動作。

- e.g. 1. He will go to England next week.  
2. I shall come to visit you tomorrow.

- b. The Formation of Simple Future Tense 「簡單未來式時態」的形成。

i. First person (I, we)	shall + verb
ii. Second person (you)	will + verb
iii. Third person (he, she, it, they)	will + verb

- e.g. 1. I shall go to school tomorrow.  
2. They will work on the project soon.

### 8. The Future Continuous Tense:-

It is used to express an action that will happen at a certain time in the future because it is planned.

「未來繼續式時態」用來表示未的事情會在預期的時間內發生。

e.g. 1. He will play tennis from 9 a.m. until 10 a.m.

We shall be playing tennis at 9:30 a.m.

2. Will he be using his computer tomorrow evening?

### 9. The Future Perfect Tense:-

It is used to express that something will have happened before a certain time in the future.

「未來完成式時態」用來表示在某未來時間前將會完成的動作。

e.g. 1. The plane flies at 8 o'clock in the morning. It will have already taken off at 8:10.

2. Tomorrow is our parent's 10th wedding anniversary.  
They will have been married for 10 years

## EXERCISE 37

*Underline the correct form of verb in each of the following sentences:*

1. My mother let me (went, go, going) to the theatre last night.
2. She (had gone, was gone, was going) before I came home.
3. My watch (has stopped, stopped, is stopping) for two days.
4. The train (starts, will start, started) at ten o'clock next evening.
5. She (crossed, was crossing, will cross) the bridge when I met her.
6. The boy (lost, was losing, loses) his book last month.
7. We (did not see, have not seen, shall not see) him since last month.
8. Call a doctor quickly! The injured man (dies, died, is dying) .
9. That naughty boy (will climb, is climbing, climbed) the tree now.
10. The gardener (digs, dug, will dig) in the garden every morning.

## EXERCISE 38

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verbs in brackets.

1. John \_\_\_\_\_ ten dollars to spend. (have)
2. Please keep quiet, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio now. (listen)
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ a composition for two hours. (write)
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ your work yesterday. (finish)
5. When I came into the room, the man \_\_\_\_\_. (die)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ up at seven o'clock every morning. (get)
7. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ to America soon. (go)
8. "This book \_\_\_\_\_ to me," Susan says. (belong)
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ him for a long time. (not see)
10. The moon and the star \_\_\_\_\_ at night. (shine)
11. What \_\_\_\_\_ the matter? (be)
12. Susan \_\_\_\_\_ (be) eighteen years old in April.
13. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (join) our team for four years by July.
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) John when I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to school yesterday.
15. Dogs always \_\_\_\_\_ at strangers. (bark)

## EXERCISE 39

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. Mary  A. went  B. goes  C. will go  D. had gone to Macau last winter.

2. We  A. live  
 B. lived  
 C. are living here for ten years.  
 D. has lived

3. When I saw him, he  A. played  
 B. was playing tennis.  
 C. plays  
 D. is playing

4. I  A. stopped  
 B. have stopped playing before he arrived.  
 C. was stopping  
 D. had stopped

5. Next spring, he  A. buys  
 B. will buy a new LED monitor.  
 C. bought  
 D. is buying

6. We  A. pay  
 B. shall pay him for what we have bought.  
 C. does not pay  
 D. are paying

7. The rain  A. still falls  
 B. will still fall heavily now.  
 C. still fall  
 D. is still falling

8. The shepherd  A. knows where his sheep were.  
 B. knew  
 C. will know  
 D. was knowing

9. While I  A. was fixing  
 B. fix  
 C. fixed my mobile phone, she called my  
 D. have fixed number urgently.
10. At 8 o'clock tomorrow I  A. am  
 B. shall be studying.  
 C. have been  
 D. was

## EXERCISE 40

*Write the correct form of verbs in bracket against the numbers in the margin.*

A poor Greek soldier was once (1. lead) a horse which had a load of gold on its back. The gold (2. belong) to the king, Alexander the Great. The king happened to be (3. ride) behind him, but the soldier (4. not know) that. After some time the horse (5. is) tired. It could not carry the gold any further. Seeing this, the soldier (6. take) the load off the horse's back and (7. carry) it himself. The king (8. be) pleased to see how kind the soldier was. But the gold was so heavy that the soldier (9. throw) it on to the ground. The king shouted at him, " (10. not throw) it down! Carry it to your tent. If you can, it is all yours!"

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

## ADVERBS (副詞)

An Adverb is a word that tells us more about a verb, an adjective or another adverb.

「副詞」是用來修飾動詞，形容詞和另一個副詞。

### There are seven kinds of Adverbs (副詞的7種類)

#### 1. Adverbs of Time (時間副詞)

Such Adverbs tell us the time an action happens. They answer the question "when?". They may be put at the beginning or at the end of a sentence.

「時間副詞」表示動作產生的時間。它們用作回答用 'when?' 發問的問題。它們可放在句子的前面或後面。

- e.g. 1. I have seen him **before**.  
(Question: When have you seen him?)
- 2. I saw him **yesterday**.  
(Question: When did you see him?)
- 3. **Today**, he will visit me.  
(Question: When will he visit you?)
- 4. He phoned you **a few minutes ago**.  
(Question: When did he phone you?)

Other Adverbs of Time:-

tomorrow, daily, once upon a time, always, afterwards, soon, long ago, at once, lately, already, since, never, formerly, now, etc.

#### 2. Adverbs of Place (地方副詞)

Adverbs of Place tell us the place an action is done. Therefore, they answer the question "Where?". They are placed after the verbs.

「地方副詞」表示動作的地點。因此它們用作回答用 'where?' 發問的問題。它們放在動詞的後面。

- e.g. 1. He went **upstairs**.  
(Question: Where did he go?)
- 2. They went to the **toilet**.  
(Question: Where did they go?)
- 3. The dog follows him **everywhere**.  
(Question: Where does the dog follow him?)

Other Adverbs of Place:-

back, backward, forward, away, up, down, downstairs, out, inside, outside, here, there, anywhere, etc.

### 3. Adverbs of Frequency (次數副詞)

Adverbs of Frequency tell us how often an action is done. Therefore, they answer the question "how often?" or "how many times?".

「次數副詞」表示動作的次數。因此它們用作回答用 'how often?' 或 'how many times?' 發問的問題。

- e.g. 1. He washes his hair **once a week**.  
(Question: How often does he wash his hair?)
- 2. The teacher explained the whole paragraph **twice**.  
(Question: How many times did the teacher explain the whole paragraph?)
- 3. He **seldom** goes to a concert.  
(Question: How often does he go to a concert?)

Other Adverbs of Frequency:-

once, again, twice, thrice, never, always, etc.

### 4. Adverbs of Manner (態度副詞)

Adverbs of Manner tell us how an action is done. Therefore, they answer the question "How?".

「態度副詞」表示動作是怎樣完成的。因此它們用作回答用 'how?' 發問的問題。

- e.g. 1. She speaks **clearly**.  
(Question: How does she speak?)
- 2. He works very **hard**.  
(Question: How does he work?)
- 3. The baby slept **soundly**.  
(Question: How did the baby sleep?)
- 4. The old man walked **slowly**.  
(Question: How did he walk?)

Adverbs of Manner always end in "-ly",

- e.g. quickly, easily, happily, bravely, quietly, gently, nicely, etc.
- Exceptions :-** better, worse, well, etc.

## 5. Adverbs of Degree (程度副詞)

Adverbs of Degree show us to what extent an action is done.

「程度副詞」表示動作的進展程度。

- e.g.
1. She sings pretty well.
  2. I am greatly disappointed.
  3. He writes very carefully.
  4. Marco is rather lazy.
  5. The man can hardly borrow money from the bank.

Other Adverbs of Degree:-

quite, fairly, nearly, almost, too, wholly, partly, any, fully, enough, so, altogether, much, as, etc.

## 6. Interrogative Adverbs (疑問副詞)

An Interrogative Adverb is used to ask a question.

「疑問副詞」用作發問問題。

- e.g.
1. Where have you been?
  2. When will Mary return?
  3. Why don't you answer my question?
  4. How did he do that?
  5. How far can it run?

## 7. Adverbs of Negation and Affirmation (否定或肯定副詞)

"yes", "no", "not", "certainly", "surely", etc. are also adverbs. They are called Adverbs of Negation or Affirmation.

'yes', 'no', 'not', 'certainly', 'surely' 等都是副詞。這些副詞稱「否定副詞」或「肯定副詞」。

- e.g.
1. I certainly did.
  2. Yes, I do.
  3. No, I do not know him.
  4. Tom will surely win the game.

## Formation of Adverbs (副詞的形成)

1. Most adverbs are formed generally from adjectives by adding "-ly".

絕大部份副詞都是在形容詞後加上'-ly'而形成的。

e.g.

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
1. bright	→ brightly
2. beautiful	→ beautifully
3. brave	→ bravely
4. clever	→ cleverly
5. deep	→ deeply

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
6. glad	→ gladly
7. large	→ largely
8. loud	→ loudly
9. near	→ nearly
10. wild	→ wildly

2. If an adjective ends in "-y" and with a consonant preceded, the adverb is formed by changing "-y" into "i" and adding "-ly".

當一個形容詞的末尾字母是'-y'，而'-y'字母前是啞音字母時，將'-y'變為"i"然後加上'-ly'便成為副詞。

e.g.

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
1. busy	→ busily
2. cloudy	→ cloudily
3. easy	→ easily
4. funny	→ funnily

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
5. happy	→ happily
6. heavy	→ heavily
7. muddy	→ muddily
8. ready	→ readily

3. If an adjective ends in "-le" and without a vowel preceded, simply change "-e" into "-y" to form the adverb. 當形容詞的末尾字母是'-le'時，而'-le'字母前是啞音字母時，將'-e'變'-y'而成為副詞。

e.g.

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
1. ample	→ amply
2. double	→ doubly
3. gentle	→ gently

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
4. simple	→ simply
5. single	→ singly
6. whole	→ wholly

4. Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives.

有些副詞和形容詞是同一個字的。

e.g.

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
1. early	→ early
2. far	→ far
3. fast	→ fast

<u>Adjective</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
4. hard	→ hard
5. low	→ low
6. straight	→ straight

Note : "lowly" is not an adverb, it is an adjective.

注意 : "lowly" 不是副詞，它是形容詞。

## 5. Adverbs are also formed from nouns.

有些副詞是由名詞形成的。

e.g.

<u>Noun</u>	<u>Adverb</u>	<u>Noun</u>	<u>Adverb</u>
1. bed	→ abed	10. night	→ nightly
2. board	→ overboard		tonight
3. body	→ bodily	11. shore	→ ashore
4. day	→ daily today	12. side	→ aside inside, outside
5. door	→ indoors, outdoors	13. sleep	→ asleep
6. head	→ ahead	14. stairs	→ upstairs, downstairs
7. hour	→ hourly	15. way	→ away
8. month	→ monthly	16. week	→ weekly
9. morrow	→ tomorrow	17. year	→ yearly

## 6. Some words are put together to form a phrase and is used as an adverb. 由幾個字組成的片語可作副詞用。

- e.g.
1. all at once ( suddenly ) ( 突然 )
  2. all the same ( 仍然 )
  3. again and again ( repeatedly ) ( 再次 )
  4. at last ( finally ) ( 最後 )
  5. at least ( 至少 )
  6. at night ( 晚上 )
  7. at once ( immediately ) ( 即刻 )
  8. at present ( now ) ( 現在 )
  9. by and by / before long ( 不久 )
  10. for some days ( 一些日子 )
  11. in front of ( 前面 )
  12. in the evening ( 晚上 )
  13. in the past ( 過去 )
  14. last evening ( 昨晚 )
  15. long ago ( 很久以前 )
  16. now and again ( sometimes ) ( 有時 )
  17. now and then ( occasionally ) ( 偶然 )
  18. once upon a time ( 從前 )
  19. one day ( 一日 )
  20. on purpose ( 目的 )
  21. over and over ( again and again / repeatedly ) ( 再次 )
  22. the day after tomorrow ( 後天 )
  23. the first time ( 第一次 )
  24. to and fro ( 來來往往 )
  25. through and through ( completely ) ( 透徹 )

Here are some sample sentences:- (副詞例句)

1. The boys were running together, but they stopped all at once.
2. Close your books and begin to write at once.
3. The wind began to blow and at last the rain fell.
4. The test is quite difficult, so I go through it over and over again.
5. My brother will finish this lesson before long.
6. Mary did not want to cry in front of all the people.
7. The man was walking to and fro in the street smoking a cigarette.
8. My uncle told us the truth on purpose.

## EXERCISE 41

Form adverbs from the following words:

- |           |       |            |       |
|-----------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1. near   | _____ | 2. hard    | _____ |
| 3. short  | _____ | 4. dull    | _____ |
| 5. bad    | _____ | 6. natural | _____ |
| 7. easy   | _____ | 8. quick   | _____ |
| 9. gentle | _____ | 10. true   | _____ |
| 11. nice  | _____ | 12. early  | _____ |
| 13. cruel | _____ | 14. whole  | _____ |
| 15. body  | _____ | 16. fast   | _____ |
| 17. glad  | _____ | 18. heavy  | _____ |
| 19. late  | _____ | 20. good   | _____ |
| 21. long  | _____ | 21. much   | _____ |

## EXERCISE 42

Fill in the blanks with the following adverbs. Each adverb should be used once only.

soundly, unkindly, carelessly, one by one, again and again, across, alone, along, quarterly, past, twice, neatly, aloud, happily, well.

1. When I read English, I always read \_\_\_\_\_.
2. As I walked \_\_\_\_\_ the shop, I saw a police officer.
3. We always walk \_\_\_\_\_ the road on a zebra-crossing.
4. He hits his dog \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Our teacher explains the hard words \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He sleeps \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Tom did his work \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I always go to school \_\_\_\_\_.
9. We went into our teacher's room \_\_\_\_\_.
10. He did \_\_\_\_\_ in the Maths test.
11. I like to walk \_\_\_\_\_ the road lined with trees.
12. Tom has read this story book through \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The boys and the girls are playing \_\_\_\_\_ in the playground.
14. We must do our homework \_\_\_\_\_.
15. This magazine is published \_\_\_\_\_.



### Comparison of Adverbs ( 副詞的程度比較 )

Adverbs like adjectives, also have three degrees of comparison:-  
Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

「副詞」和「形容詞」同樣分三種程度比較，那是「原級」、「比較級」和「最高級」。

1. Adverbs of one syllable form the Comparative Degree by adding "-er" and the Superlative by adding "-est" to the end of the Positive.

在只有一個音的「原級」副詞後面加上 '-er' 和 '-est' 便分別成為「比較級」和「最高級」的副詞。

	<u>Positive</u> <u>原級</u>	<u>Comparative</u> <u>比較級</u>	<u>Superlative</u> <u>最高級</u>
a.	bright	brighter	brightest
b.	fast	faster	fastest
c.	hard	harder	hardest
d.	loud	louder	loudest
e.	near	nearer	nearest
f.	short	shorter	shortest

e.g. 1. Mary works hard.  
 John works harder than Mary.  
 Fred works the hardest of all.  
 2. I run fast.  
 He runs faster.  
 She runs the fastest.

2. Adverbs of more than one syllable or ending in "-ly" are compared by adding 'MORE' to the Positive to form the Comparative and 'THE MOST' to form the Superlative.

當有多過一個音的副詞的最後字母是 '-ly' 時，便在這個詞的前面加 'more' 便成「比較級」；加 'the most' 便成為「最高級」。

	<u>Positive</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
a.	thirstily	more thirstily	the most thirstily
b.	wildly	more wildly	the most wildly
c.	wisely	more wisely	the most wisely
d.	wonderfully	more wonderfully	the most wonderfully

e.g. Positive: The star shines brightly.  
 Comparative: The moon shines more brightly than the star.  
 Superlative: The sun shines the most brightly.

3. A few adverbs are compared irregularly.

下列副詞的三級比較均不相同。

	<u>Positive</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Superlative</u>
a.	badly	worse	the worst
b.	far	farther	the farthest
c.	ill	worse	the worst
d.	late	later	the lastest
e.	little	less	the least
f.	much	more	the most
g.	up	upper	uppermost
h.	well	better	the best

e.g. Positive: He paints badly.

Comparative: She paints worse than he does.

Superlative: Her sister paints the worst of the three.

## EXERCISE 43

*Compare the following adverbs:*

1. late: \_\_\_\_\_
2. soundly: \_\_\_\_\_
3. safe: \_\_\_\_\_
4. near: \_\_\_\_\_
5. far: \_\_\_\_\_
6. fast: \_\_\_\_\_
7. soon: \_\_\_\_\_
8. badly: \_\_\_\_\_
9. wisely: \_\_\_\_\_
10. well: \_\_\_\_\_
11. much: \_\_\_\_\_

12. quickly: \_\_\_\_\_
13. hard: \_\_\_\_\_
14. little: \_\_\_\_\_
15. carefully: \_\_\_\_\_

## D Position of Adverbs (副詞的位置)

1. The Adverb is always placed as near as possible to the word it modifies.

「位置副詞」常常被放置在最接近被修飾的字的位置。

- e.g. 1. He often says he visits his uncle.  
2. He says he often visits his uncle.

In e.g.1, 'often' modifies the verb says.

In e.g.2, 'often' modifies the verb visits.

So the two sentences have completely different meanings.

2. When the adverb is used to modify an intransitive verb, it usually goes after the verb.

當副詞修飾一個不及物動詞時，副詞應放在動詞之後。

- e.g. 1. My friend lives there.                    2. She sings sweetly.  
3. It climbs quickly.

3. Adverbs of time such as 'always', 'ever', 'often', 'seldom', 'never', 'sometimes', 'generally' and 'before' are placed before the verb they modify.  
副詞中之 'always', 'ever', 'often', 'seldom', 'never', 'sometimes', 'generally' 和 'before' 等，應放在被修飾的動詞之前。

- e.g. 1. He always speaks the truth.            2. I sometimes feel tired.  
3. He never tries hard.                            4. I seldom go shopping.

Note: The adverbs below are placed after the "verb to be".

註：當副詞用作修飾 'be 動詞' 時，該副詞應放在 'be 動詞' 之後。

- e.g. 1. He is always late.  
2. We shall soon be home.

4. If the Adverb is used to modify a transitive verb with an object following it, the adverb goes after the object.

當副詞被用作修飾一個有受詞隨後的及物動詞時，則該副詞應放在受詞之後。

- e.g. 1. He does this work carefully.  
2. She planted her flowers beautifully.

5. The Adverb "enough" is usually placed after the adjective it modifies.

副詞 'enough' 通常放在被修飾的形容詞之後。

- e.g. 1. Your paintings are good enough to win a prize.  
2. He spoke loud enough to be heard at the back of the hall.

6. In using the adverb "only", care should be taken, for it gives different meanings to the sentence when it is placed in different positions.

用副詞 'only' 時，應特別小心其放置的位置，因為不同的位置會有不同的意思。

- e.g. I gave her a flower.
1. Only I gave her a flower. ( meaning: No one gives her a flower except me )
  2. I only gave her a flower. ( meaning: I only gave it, I do nothing else. )
  3. I gave only her a flower. ( meaning: I gave nobody else a flower but her. )
  4. I gave her a flower only.  
I gave her only a flower.  
( meaning: I gave her only a flower and nothing else. )

Usually the word "only" is placed before the word it intends to modify.  
通常副詞 'only' 被放在它要修飾的字的前面。

上述例句的意思：

第一句，「只有我給她一朵花。」

第二句，「我除了給她一朵花外，並沒有做其他事情。」

第三句，「我除了給她一朵花外，我並沒給其他人花。」

第四句，「我除了給她一朵花外，並沒有其他東西給她。」

## EXERCISE 44

Put a mark 'A' to show where the missing adverb should be.

1. She worked . ( )
2. The boy returned to school . ( )
3. I shall do it again . ( )
4. Mary can sing well . ( )
5. I do not mean that . ( )
6. He runs to school . ( )
7. She dropped her watch . ( )
8. I will listen to you . ( )
9. His teacher had told him to write neatly . ( )
10. She sings loudly . ( )
11. He spoke clear to be heard . ( )
12. The naughty boy did his homework . ( )
13. You are late for the train . ( )
14. I feel tired . ( )
15. He repaired the machine . ( )
16. My father was glad to see his teacher . ( )
17. The journey was long . ( )
18. My father will come back . ( )
19. You are right . ( )
20. He ran to the door . ( )

## EXERCISE 45

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. Nurses speak  A. quickly  B. gently to the sick.  
 C. noisily  D. loudly

2. He answered the headmaster's question  A. rudely  
 B. freely  
 C. politely  
 D. shortly
3. The children played  A. wisely  
 B. happily in the garden.  
 C. lazily  
 D. kindly
4.  A. Which  
 B. When will you leave Hong Kong?  
 C. Why  
 D. Where
5. It was  A. noisily  
 B. calmly twelve o'clock when I woke up.  
 C. nearly  
 D. weakly
6. The thick book slipped  A. carefully  
 B. heavily on the table.  
out of his fingers and fell  C. hardly  
 D. strongly
7.  A. Which  
 B. When are you so late?  
 C. Why  
 D. Where
8. It is very noisy because the clock  A. often  
 B. always stops buzzing.  
 C. ever  
 D. never

## PREPOSITIONS ( 前置詞／介詞 )

A preposition is a word put before a noun or a pronoun. It shows the relation between the noun or the pronoun and other words in the same sentence. It may be used to indicate position, place, direction, time, etc. 「前置詞」亦稱「介詞」，是放在名詞或代名詞之前，以表示該詞的位置、地點、方向、時間等。

- e.g. 1. She sat on a chair.  
2. They live in this house.  
3. We all go with him.  
4. The seal jumps into the sea.

Here is a list of prepositions: ( 前置詞字彙。 )

about	above	across	after	against
along	among	as	at	
before	behind	below	beneath	beside
between	by	because of		
down	during			
except				
for	from			
in	into	inside	instead of	
near	next to			
of	off	on	outside	over
out of	past			
round				
since				
than	through	till	to	towards
under	underneath	until	unto	up
upon				
without	with	within		

Here are some common uses of prepositions. ( 前置詞/介詞的用法。 )

## Prepositions of Time ( 表示時間的前置詞 )

### 1. 'AT' is used to show specific time.

“AT” 用來表示準確的時間。

- e.g. 1. at one o'clock ( 在一時 )  
2. at this moment ( 現在 )  
3. at noon ( 在正午 )  
4. at night ( 在晚上 )  
5. at midnight ( 在午夜 )  
6. at sunset ( 在日落 )  
7. at daybreak ( 在黎明 )  
8. at dawn ( 在破曉 )  
9. at sunrise ( 在日出 )  
10. at Christmas ( 在聖誕節 )  
11. at New Year ( 在新年 )  
12. at present ( 現在 )  
13. at once ( 即刻 )  
14. at the same time ( 同時 )

### 2. 'BY' is used to show before or no later than a specified time;

'UNTIL' (till) is used to show how long a situation goes on.

“BY” 用來表示時間一到；

“UNTIL” 用來表示一段時間的結束。

- e.g. 1. by June ( 到了六月 )  
2. by the end of this week ( 在本星期尾 )  
3. until I have finished washing ( 直至我完成洗滌 )

### 3. 'DURING' is used to indicate a period of time when something happens.

“DURING” 用來表示在某事情發生的期間。

- e.g. 1. during the New Year holiday ( 在新年假期之間 )  
2. during my study in America ( 在美國讀書期間 )

### 4. 'FOR' is used to show how long an action lasts.

“FOR” 用來表示動作能夠維持的時間。

- e.g. 1. for three months ( 三個月 )  
2. for four weeks ( 四星期 )  
3. for ten years ( 十年 )  
4. for a few hours ( 數小時 )  
5. for five minutes ( 五分鐘 )

## 5. 'IN' is used to show a certain period of time.

“IN” 用來表示某一段時間。

- e.g. 1. in two months (兩個月內)  
2. in 2020 (在二〇二〇年)  
3. in time (及時)  
4. in the morning (早上)  
5. in June (在六月)  
6. in the afternoon (在下午)  
7. in a week (一星期內)  
8. in a month (一個月內)  
9. in Spring (在春天)  
10. in an hour (一小時內)

## 6. 'ON' is used for days and dates.

“ON” 用來表示一個日字。

- e.g. 1. on Christmas Eve (聖誕節前夕)  
2. on Friday night (在星期五晚上)  
3. on Wednesday (在星期三)  
4. on his birthday (在他的生日)  
5. on the 5th of March (在三月五日)  
6. on time (準時)

## 7. 'SINCE' is used to show the beginning of the period and how long something has been happening.

“SINCE” 用來表示事情發生的時間直到現在有多久。

- e.g. 1. since last week (自從上星期起)  
2. since last month (自從上個月起)  
3. since nine o'clock (自從九時起)  
4. since 2023 (自從二零二三年起)  
5. since his birth (自從他的誕生起)

## Prepositions of Place (表示地點的前置詞)

### 1. 'AT' is used to show the exact place.

“AT” 用來表示明確的地方。

- e.g. 1. at home (在家中)  
2. at the door (在門前)  
3. at the table (在桌子旁)  
4. at the village (在鄉村裏)  
5. at the MTR station (在港鐵站)  
6. at school (在校內)  
7. at 734 Causeway Bay Road (在銅鑼灣道七百三十四號)

2. 'BETWEEN' ... 'AND' are mainly used to indicate the position of places and the relationship of people.

'BETWEEN' 和 'AND' 主要用來表示地方的位置和人物的關係。

- e.g. 1. between the lift and the classroom ( 在電梯和課室之間 )  
2. between the two boys ( 在兩個孩子之中 )

3. 'FROM' is used to introduce the starting point, place, person, etc.

“由” 表示以某地方為起點。

- e.g. 1. from England ( 由英國 )  
2. from New York ( 由紐約 )  
3. from town to town ( 由一個城市到另一個城市 )  
4. from one place to another ( 由某地到另外一個地方 )

4. 'IN' is used for a larger area.

“IN” 用來表示範圍大的地方。

- e.g. 1. in the room ( 在房裏 )  
2. in the kitchen ( 在廚房裏 )  
3. in Hong Kong ( 在香港 )  
4. in the city ( 在城市裏 )  
5. in the ocean ( 在海洋裏 )  
6. in North Point ( 在北角 )

5. 'INTO' differs from 'IN'. The latter denotes position while 'INTO' denotes motion or direction to a point within.

"INTO" 和 "IN" 的分別是 "IN" 是表示位置。但 "INTO" 是表示入內的動作或方向。

- e.g. 1. A boy walked into the house in which we were living. ( 進入屋裏 )  
2. He was in the house. ( 他在屋裏 )

6. 'ON' is used to express one thing resting on another.

“ON” 用來表示一種物件附在另一種物件上面。

- e.g. 1. on the table ( 在桌上 )  
2. on the desk ( 在書桌上 )  
3. on the floor ( 在地上 )  
4. on the River Nile ( 在尼羅河上 )  
5. on the road ( 在路上 )  
6. on the bus ( 在公共汽車上 )

■ Here are some other words used together with prepositions:-

下列一些常和其他字用在一起的前置詞。

1.

- e.g. 1. at ease (安逸)  
2. at times (有時)  
3. at hand (在手中)  
4. at all events (無論如何)  
5. at rest (休息)

2.

- e.g. 6. by heart (熟記)  
7. by air (航空旅行)  
8. by no means (無論如何)  
9. by oneself (獨自地)  
10. by mistake (由於錯誤)

3.

- e.g. 11. in common (相同)  
12. in a hurry (匆忙中)  
13. in private (私人)  
14. in need (需要)  
15. in other words (換言之)  
16. in trouble (麻煩)  
17. in turn (輪流)  
18. in sight (看見)

4.

- e.g. 19. on fire (火警)  
20. on a visit (探訪)  
21. on foot (步行)  
22. on business (做生意)  
23. on purpose (有目的)  
24. on the whole (全部)  
25. on duty (當值)  
26. out of danger (脫離危險)  
27. out of doors (戶外)  
28. out of work (失業)  
29. out of date (落伍)  
30. out of control (失去控制)

■ Prepositional phrases with particular prepositions.

Here are some examples:-

「前置詞片語」的前置詞。

舉例如下：

1. e.g. 1. afraid of somebody or something (害怕某人或某物)  
 2. agree with a person (贊成別人的意見)  
 3. aim at an object (瞄準某物)  
 4. annoyed at something (為了某事感到煩惱)  
 5. annoyed with a person (為了某人感到煩惱)  
 6. apply for a job (求職)  
 7. ashamed of a behaviour (對某一種行為感到羞愧)  
 8. angry with someone (對某人發怒)  
 9. attend to business (專心做生意)  
 10. aware of something (覺察到)

2. e.g. 11. because of someone or something (因為某人或某事)  
 12. beg for help (懇求幫助)  
 13. belong to someone (屬於某人的)  
 14. born in some place (生於某地)  
 15. borrow something from someone (向某人借某東西)  
 16. break into pieces (打破成碎片)  
 17. break into a house (闖進某屋)  
 18. built of something (由某物建築成)  
 19. built by someone (由某人建築)  
 20. busy with/over work (忙於工作)

3. e.g. 21. call on someone (visit someone) (探訪某人)  
 22. call to you (shout) (向你大叫)  
 23. care for a person or thing (關心某人或某物)  
 24. carry on with something (繼續做某事)  
 25. cover with (覆蓋着)  
 26. compare with something (與某物比較)  
 27. congratulate a person on doing something. (恭喜某人做某事)  
 28. count on someone (rely on) (依賴某人)  
 29. cure of a disease (醫治疾病)

4. e.g. 30. deal with a person (對待某人)  
 31. decide on an action (決定某行動)  
 32. depend on someone (依靠某人)  
 33. depart from a place (離開某地)  
 34. die of a disease (死於某疾病)  
 35. different from someone or something (與某人或某事不相同)  
 36. difference between two things (兩物之差異)  
 37. divide in half (分開一半)  
 38. divide into four parts (分成四份)  
 39. divide among three (分給三人)  
 40. dressed in red (穿着紅色的衣服)

5. e.g. 41. equal to ( 等如 )  
42. excuse me for my absence or faults ( 原諒我的缺席或錯處 )  
43. excused from a duty ( 免除責任 )  
44. fill in the blanks ( 填充 )  
45. feed on food ( 以食物餵飼 )  
46. full of something ( 裝滿了某物 )  
47. free from trouble ( 免除麻煩 )  
48. fond of something ( 喜悅某物 )

6. e.g. 49. get into trouble ( 深入麻煩 )  
50. get up ( 起床 / 立 )  
51. get rid of ( 清除 )  
52. give something to someone ( 給某人一些東西 )  
53. glance at somebody ( 匆匆看某人 )  
54. good for health ( 對健康有益 )  
55. good at tennis ( 擅長打網球 )  
56. go on with your work ( 繼續你的工作 )  
57. grow up ( 長大 )

7. e.g. 58. hide from someone ( 躲避某人 )  
59. hope for something ( 希望得到某些東西 )

8. e.g. 60. increase in numbers ( 增加數目 )  
61. insist on doing something ( 堅持做某事 )  
62. introduce to ( 介紹 )

9. e.g. 63. join in an activity ( 加入某活動 )

10. e.g. 64. laugh at a person ( 取笑某人 )  
65. leave for a place ( 離開往某地 )  
66. listen to a person ( 聽別人談話 )  
67. listen to the radio ( 聽收音機 )  
68. live on food ( 靠食物為生 )  
69. long for something ( 希望取得某些東西 )  
70. look for a lost thing ( 找尋失物 )  
71. look at something or someone ( 望著某人或某物 )  
72. look over ( examine ) ( 檢查 )

11. e.g. 73. make up one's mind ( 決定 )  
74. made of cloth ( 用布造成 )  
75. made by hand ( 手製 )  
76. made in China ( 中國製造 )

12. e.g. 77. pay for something (付錢)  
78. play on the piano (演奏鋼琴)  
79. pleased with a performance (對表現／表演感到滿意)  
80. prepare for work (準備工作)  
81. prepare for an examination (準備考試)  
82. prevent from doing something (防止做某事)  
83. point to a thing (指著某物)  
84. protect from danger (受到保護而脫險)  
85. put on one's coat (穿着外衣)

13. e.g. 86. reply to someone's letter (回信)  
87. remind of (提醒)  
88. run after (追逐)  
89. read over / through a book (重複閱讀)  
90. return from a place (由某地回來)

14. e.g. 91. satisfied with somebody or something (對某人或某事感到滿足)  
92. send a letter to him (送他一封信)  
93. shoot at (向...射擊)  
94. short of something (缺少)  
95. shout at a person (對某人大聲叫)  
96. smile at a person (對某人微笑)  
97. sorry for someone / an event (為某人或事感到惋惜)  
98. speak to a person (對某人說話)  
99. suffer from an illness (患病)

15. e.g. 100. take care of (小心照顧)  
101. talk of / about something (說及某事)  
102. talk over (discuss) (討論)  
103. thank for someone's help (感謝某人的幫助)  
104. think of something or someone (想念某物或某人)  
105. think over a matter (深思熟慮)  
106. translate into another language (翻譯成另一種語言)

16. e.g. 107. wait for someone (等候某人)  
108. watch for (監視，等待)  
109. weak in a subject (對某學科不擅長)  
110. wet with rain (雨水淋濕)  
111. wish for something (希望得到某東西)

17. e.g. 112. yield to somebody (向某人屈服)

## EXERCISE 46

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. Our family have a big gathering       A. from       B. over       C. in       D. at      Christmas.
2. They may leave       A. for       B. at      any time from now.       C. away       D. in
3. The birds sing       A. on       B. into      the morning.       C. to       D. in
4. It is good       A. of       B. at      you to be so kind to me.       C. to       D. from
5. My room is       A. at       B. in      the end of the hall.       C. by       D. with
6. He put his money       A. by       B. into      the box.       C. to       D. out
7. The cheese is made       A. at       B. in      Holland.       C. by       D. of

8. Wait  A. for  
 B. from me. I am coming.  
 C. to  
 D. at
9. They are suffering  A. from  
 B. of illness.  
 C. on  
 D. with
10. They wear different kinds  A. of  
 B. for dresses.  
 C. in  
 D. to

## EXERCISE 47

*Choose the right one to fill in the space. Use each word once only.*

1. ( **for, at, of** )
- (a) Peter is very good \_\_\_\_\_ English.  
(b) Apples are good \_\_\_\_\_ our health.  
(c) It is good \_\_\_\_\_ him to feed the poor cat.
2. ( **for, with, to** )
- (a) The soldiers are told to fight \_\_\_\_\_ death.  
(b) The two tigers fight \_\_\_\_\_ each other.  
(c) They fight \_\_\_\_\_ a precious prize.
3. ( **into, at, for, after** )
- (a) She is looking \_\_\_\_\_ the beautiful picture.  
(b) The police must look \_\_\_\_\_ this case carefully.  
(c) We are looking \_\_\_\_\_ the lost purse.  
(d) The mother looks \_\_\_\_\_ her baby carefully .

4. ( **from, by, in, of** )

- (a) The table is made \_\_\_\_\_ wood.  
(b) The desk is made \_\_\_\_\_ the carpenter.  
(c) The bell is made \_\_\_\_\_ China.  
(d) Butter is made \_\_\_\_\_ milk.

5. ( **among, into, between** )

- (a) Mary, please divide the cake \_\_\_\_\_ six pieces.  
(b) Divide the birthday cake \_\_\_\_\_ these children.  
(c) Don't stand \_\_\_\_\_ me and the TV.

6. ( **at, on, in** )

- (a) We shall see our uncle \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve.  
(b) Christmas is \_\_\_\_\_ December.  
(c) We shall meet each other \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas.

## EXERCISE 48

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. He went out  A. from  
 B. off  his hat.  
 C. to  
 D. without

2. A prisoner has escaped  A. from  
 B. at  the prison.  
 C. into  
 D. out

3. I don't like to depend  A. of  
 B. on  anyone.  
 C. with  
 D. by

4. The burglar broke  A. in  
 B. through      my house last night and took  
 C. down  
 D. into      my computer away.
5. Will you explain this question  A. at  
 B. by  
 C. from      me?  
 D. to
6. I prefer to go  A. at  
 B. by  
 C. with      air.  
 D. on
7. Have you borrowed a digital camera  A. under  
 B. by  
 C. to      him?  
 D. from
8. The nurse did everything  A. of  
 B. with      care.  
 C. at  
 D. off
9. Most children are afraid  A. at  
 B. of      the dark.  
 C. to  
 D. for
10. Don't walk  A. into  
 B. out      that private garden .  
 C. at  
 D. in

## EXERCISE 49

*Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.*

1. He went for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ himself.
2. It will all be over \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.
3. I can still see him \_\_\_\_\_ a distance.
4. A motor car cannot run \_\_\_\_\_ gasoline.
5. I have got rid \_\_\_\_\_ all my trouble.
6. They were fighting \_\_\_\_\_ that moment.
7. She will sail \_\_\_\_\_ Japan very soon.
8. I tied these two books \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of string.
9. Be careful when you walk \_\_\_\_\_ the road.
10. Mr. Lee has a family \_\_\_\_\_ seven persons.

## EXERCISE 50

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. When it rains, I cannot go \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella.  
 A. without  
 B. of  
 C. with  
 D. at
2. What's the date \_\_\_\_\_ today?  
 A. of  
 B. on  
 C. off  
 D. with
3. Somebody is knocking \_\_\_\_\_ the door.  
 A. on  
 B. up  
 C. in  
 D. at

4. I met my uncle  A. at  B. with chance.  
 C. by  D. of
5. The robot model is made  A. with  B. by the Form 1 students.  
 C. in  D. of
6. They found him guilty  A. of  B. for murder.  
 C. in  D. at

## EXERCISE 51

*Fill in the blanks with suitable prepositions.*

1. Shall I introduce my supervisor \_\_\_\_\_ you?
2. I have not got a job now so I have to depend \_\_\_\_\_ my family.
3. Tommy is ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ his brutal act.
4. Are you looking \_\_\_\_\_ your backpack?
5. Susan is very different \_\_\_\_\_ Mary although they are twins.
6. Have you prepared \_\_\_\_\_ the test next week?
7. Thomas is absent \_\_\_\_\_ school today because he is sick.
8. Come back, boys! You have to carry \_\_\_\_\_ with your homework.
9. Are you hiding something \_\_\_\_\_ me? You look really weird.
10. Your piece of writing reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ my mother.

# CONJUNCTIONS (連接詞)

A Conjunction is a word that joins other words, clauses, phrases and sentences. Read the following sentences:-

「連接詞」是將其他的字、子句、片語和句子連接在一起的字。試讀下面的例子:-

- e.g. 1. He is rich. I am poor.  
2. He is rich but I am poor.

The Conjunction "but" is used to join the two sentences. Sometimes a conjunction is also used to join words. 上面的例句2，'but' 這個字將 'He is rich.' 和 'I am poor.' 兩個句子連接在一起，所以 'but' 字便是「連接詞」。「連接詞」亦可將兩個字連在一起。以下是一些例子:-

- e.g. 1. My hands and legs are limbs.  
2. Tom and Henry are coming together.



## The use of some common conjunctions:- 一些常用的連接詞的用法:-

### 1. After (在…之後)

- a. He went home after he had gone shopping.  
b. He started his journey after the rain had stopped.

### 2. And (和)

- a. Thomas is a tall and fat man.  
b. He is a clever and honest man.

### 3. Because (因為)

- a. Please give me some financial help because I am unusually hard up? (hard up = short of money)  
b. He has stayed at home for two weeks because he has broken his leg.

### 4. Before (在…之前)

- a. Think it over before you answer.  
b. My father died before I was born.

### 5. But (但是)

- a. He is rich but he is sad.  
b. He is poor but he is honest.

**6. For (因為)**

- a. You must do it for it is your own job.
- b. I cannot give you any money for I have a big family to support.
- c. I must leave for it is getting dark.

**7. If (如果)**

- a. If he studies hard, he will pass the examination.
- b. I shall come to you if I have time.

**8. Lest (以免)**

- a. Run fast lest you miss the train.
- b. Do your work lest the teacher will punish you.

**9. Or (或者；否則)**

- a. Take it, or leave it.
- b. Take this medicine or you will die.

**10. Otherwise (否則)**

- a. Get up early, otherwise you will be late for school.

**11. Since (自從)**

- a. I have not seen him since last Friday.
- b. Since you left home, I have been doing house chores all by myself.  
(house chores = 家務)

**12. Than (比)**

- a. Health is more important than wealth ( is ).
- b. He is taller than I ( am ).  
( Note: "is" and "am" are always omitted. )

**13. That (承接上文轉入下文的字)**

- a. Tell them that I will come.
- b. Bring the vase closer that I can see better.

**14. Though and Although (雖然)**

- a. Though the weather was hot, he did not feel sticky.
- b. Although he worked very hard, he still failed in the examination.  
( Note: Do not use "but" with "though" or "although". )

## 15. Till and Until ( 直至 )

- a. I will stay till you come back.
- b. He stayed there until his father died.

## 16. Unless ( 除非 )

- a. You will not be promoted unless you work hard.
- b. I shall miss the bus unless I go immediately.

## 17. When ( 當…時 )

- a. When you were young, you were very naughty.
- b. When the cat is away, the mice will play.

## 18. Whenever ( 無論何時 )

- a. He will come whenever he is sent for.
- b. I am glad to help you whenever you like.

## 19. Where ( 在那處 )

- a. Where there is smoke, there is fire.

## 20. Wherever ( 無論何處 )

- a. He makes friends wherever he goes.
- b. Have a look at that book wherever you find it.

## 21. While ( 在…之時 )

- a. While I am opening the door, a bird flies into my house.

## ■ The use of some compound conjunctions 一些複合連接詞的用法:-

### 1. As if ( 好像是 )

- a. She looks as if she were a princess.

### 2. As long as ( 在…期間；祇要 )

- a. I will send you the information as long as I work here.
- b. The man will take care of his wife as long as he is alive.

### 3. As soon as ( 當 )

- a. He turned on the television as soon as I left.
- b. As soon as he came home, he went to sleep.

### 4. As well as ( 不只 'X'，就連 'Y' 也 )

- a. He plays tennis as well as football.
- b. Her friends as well as she are beautiful.

5. **Both ... and** ( 不但…而且 )

- a. Both George and Francis like playing computer games.

6. **Either ... or** ( 不是…或是 )

- a. You may either have tea or coffee.

- b. Either she is ill or she is mad.

( She is either ill or mad. )

7. **Even if** ( 即使 )

- a. I will not lend you my book even if you promise to return it.

8. **In order that** ( 為了 )

- a. He put it on the notice board in order that all should know.

9. **Neither ... nor** ( 既不…也不 )

- a. She neither sings nor laughs.

- b. I like neither this nor that.

10. **Not only ... but also** ( 不獨…而且 )

- a. He is not only intelligent but also hard working.

- b. My father has not only a big factory but also two restaurants.

11. **So that** ( 目的是 )

- a. Will you tidy up the desk so that I can work?

12. **So ... that** ( 如此…以至 )

- a. She is so lovely that every one likes her.

- b. The machine was so complicated that no one could operate it.

13. **Though ... yet** ( 雖然…但是 )

- a. Though he was poor, yet he never tried to steal.

- b. Though he was tired, yet he still worked very hard.

14. **Whether ... or** ( 是否…或者 )

- a. I do not care whether you like it or not.

- b. I want to know whether you are preparing to go or not.

## EXERCISE 52

*Fill in each blank with one of these conjunctions.*

and, but, because, since, for, before, after, until

1. He was drowned \_\_\_\_\_ he did not know how to swim.
2. I could not sleep last night \_\_\_\_\_ I had a headache when I woke up.
3. The baby fell asleep \_\_\_\_\_ he had cried a long time.
4. My brother could not obtain his money \_\_\_\_\_ he reached the age of twenty-one.
5. Mr. Chan is old \_\_\_\_\_ he is still very strong.
6. I have not seen him \_\_\_\_\_ weeks.
7. She did not go to school yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ she had a medical appointment.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ I could talk to him, he left.
9. I shall wait \_\_\_\_\_ he comes.
10. I have not seen her \_\_\_\_\_ she left school.

## EXERCISE 53

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1.  A. If  B. While  C. Unless  D. And we were taking our breakfast, John came in.

2. Farmers will not get good crops  A. unless  B. until they use good seeds.  
 C. if  D. and

3.  A. Though  B. After  
 C. But he is young, he can swim very fast.  
 D. While

4. Peter's work is  A. as  B. until  
 C. not good nor tidy.  
 D. neither

5. I tried to move quickly  A. when  B. since  
 C. but I could not.  
 D. and

6.  A. If  B. Since  
 C. Because you visit Hong Kong, you can stay in my house.  
 D. Until

7. Log out  A. when  B. if  
 C. before you shut the computer down.  
 D. unless

8. Don't go out  A. since  B. until  
 C. after the bell rings.  
 D. because

## EXERCISE 54

Put in the brackets the NUMBER of the part from List B that matches each part of List A. The first one is done for you.

### List A

- A. I wait... ( 5 )
- B. Peter will be late... ( )
- C. You must buy it... ( )
- D. I am fat... ( )
- E. We turned on the fan... ( )
- F. I clean my teeth... ( )
- G. She has not seen me... ( )
- H. Peter is not only clever... ( )
- I. He will come ... ( )
- J. Draw down the blinds... ( )

### List B

- 1. whether you like it or not.
- 2. because it was very hot.
- 3. since I left school.
- 4. if you invite him.
- 5. until the train arrives.
- 6. to shut out the sun.
- 7. but hardworking.
- 8. before I go to bed.
- 9. but he is thin.
- 10. unless he hurries.

## EXERCISE 55

Choose the best word given in brackets to fill in each of the following blanks:

- 1. I was working \_\_\_\_\_ Mary was singing.  
( **before, while, until** )
- 2. You must work hard \_\_\_\_\_ I shall punish you.  
( **when, or, before** )
- 3. I am not going out \_\_\_\_\_ it is raining.  
( **because, unless, and** )
- 4. The children left school \_\_\_\_\_ went home.  
( **but, unless, and** )
- 5. It is either his mistake \_\_\_\_\_ yours.  
( **both, nor, or** )
- 6. He is stronger \_\_\_\_\_ I.  
( **than, why, and** )
- 7. I shall not wait for you \_\_\_\_\_ you are late.  
( **unless, if, though** )

## INTERJECTIONS (感歎詞)

An Interjection expresses a strong and sudden feeling or emotion.

「感歎詞」是用來表達一些強烈和突然的感觸或情感。

- e.g. 1. Hello! How do you do?  
 2. Oh! You are stepping on my foot.  
 3. What! Are you mad?  
 4. Ah! You forgot what I have told you.

The words underlined above are called interjections. Other common interjections are listed below:

上面間有一橫線的字都是「感歎詞」。以下是一些常用的感歎詞:-

Ah! (啊！)	Alas! (啊呀！)	Bravo! (妙！)	Ha! (哈！)
Oh! (唉／噢／哦) 表示疑問	Hello! (喂！)	Hurrah/ hurray! (好哇！) 歡呼聲	Hush! (嘘！)
Dear me! (天啊！)	Good heavens! (天啊！)	How interesting! (多有趣呀！)	Well done! (做得好！)
My goodness! (天啊！)	What! (甚麼！)	Well! (啊！) 表示驚愕	Oh, my! (啊呀！)

## EXERCISE 56

*Fill in the blanks with suitable interjections.*

- \_\_\_\_\_! This is exactly what I want.
- \_\_\_\_\_! How are you?
- \_\_\_\_\_! I haven't done this science experiment before.
- \_\_\_\_\_! Try again.
- \_\_\_\_\_! The baby is asleep.
- \_\_\_\_\_! Peter has hit the mark.
- \_\_\_\_\_! I am so sorry.
- \_\_\_\_\_! We have won the match.
- \_\_\_\_\_! We have lost our match.
- \_\_\_\_\_! You haven't finished your work yet.

# AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES (肯定、否定、疑問句)

## THE FORMS OF AFFIRMATIVE, NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES (肯定、否定及疑問句的形式)

### 1. Affirmative Sentences (肯定句) :- 句子中沒有'NOT'.

- e.g. 1. The boy is kicking a ball.  
2. We like coffee.  
3. My brother was ill yesterday.

### 2. Negative Sentences (否定句) :- 句子中有'NOT'.

- e.g. 1. The boy is not kicking a ball.  
2. We do not like coffee.  
3. My brother was not ill yesterday.

### 3. Interrogative Sentences (疑問句) :- 句子用來發問問題

- e.g. 1. Do you live in Kowloon?  
2. Does she have a new hat?  
3. Did you catch a fish yesterday?

## THE CHANGES OF AFFIRMATIVE INTO NEGATIVE

(肯定句轉為否定句)

### 1. Sentences with auxiliary or modal verbs (am, are, is, will, can, have, was, etc.) — Put "not" after the auxiliary or modal verbs.

有助動詞的句子，在助動詞後面加 'not'。

Affirmative	Negative
a. I <u>am</u> singing.	I <u>am not</u> singing.
b. She <u>is</u> cooking.	She <u>is not</u> cooking.
c. We <u>are</u> swimming.	We <u>are not</u> swimming.
d. He <u>will</u> go there.	He <u>will not</u> go there.
e. She <u>has</u> a new hat.	She <u>has not</u> a new hat.
f. They <u>can</u> write well.	They <u>cannot</u> write well.
g. The glass <u>was</u> broken.	The glass <u>was not</u> broken.

2. Sentences without auxiliary verbs — Put "do not" or "does not" in the present tense, and "did not" in the past tense before the verbs.

沒有助動詞的句子，若是現在式時態，在動詞前加上 'do not' 或 'does not' 便可。若是過去式時態，在動詞前加上 'did not' 。

Affirmative	Negative
a. I <u>clean</u> my teeth.	I <u>do not</u> clean my teeth.
b. We <u>go</u> to school.	We <u>do not</u> go to school.
c. You <u>sing</u> well.	You <u>do not</u> sing well.
d. The boys <u>play</u> in the class.	The boys <u>do not</u> play in the class.
e. He <u>washes</u> his face.	He <u>does not</u> wash his face.
f. She <u>cooks</u> rice.	She <u>does not</u> cook rice.
g. The girl <u>listens</u> to the radio.	The girl <u>does not</u> listen to the radio.
h. I <u>wrote</u> a letter.	I <u>did not</u> write a letter.
i. He <u>bought</u> a new shirt.	He <u>did not</u> buy a new shirt.
j. She <u>drank</u> a cup of milk.	She <u>did not</u> drink a cup of milk.

3. Sentences with "some", "somebody", "someone" and "something".

句子中有 "some", "somebody", "someone" 和 "something" 的轉法：

Affirmative	Negative
some	not...any
somebody	not...anybody
someone	not...anyone
something	not...anything

- e.g. 1. I borrowed some money from him.  
I did not borrow any money from him.
2. She knows somebody in this company.  
She does not know anybody in this company.
3. We expected someone in the house.  
We did not expect anyone in the house.
4. We see something moving.  
We do not see anything moving.

4. 'Already' is changed to 'not...yet'. 'Already' 要轉為 'not...yet'.

e.g. 1. She has finished dinner already.  
She has not finished dinner yet.

## EXERCISE 57

*Change the following sentences into negative:*

1. You can go there.

---

2. My aunt visits me every week.

---

3. He is called Charles by his friends.

---

4. He goes to school every day.

---

5. Tom and Mary are singing.

---

6. These flowers smell sweet.

---

7. They were allowed to go to the library.

---

8. The old man told the truth.

---

9. The King was welcome by his people.

---

10. She will have a holiday next month.

11. The baby cries every morning.

---

12. The soldiers fought against their enemies.

---

13. We know somebody in this school.

---

14. The sportsmen run very fast.

---

15. His umbrella has been stolen.

---

## EXERCISE 58

*Change the following sentences into affirmative.*

1. The boy did not catch any fish.

---

2. She does not like swimming.

---

3. My sister is not singing a song.

---

4. They have not won the game.

---

5. They do not work in the café.

---

6. The coach will not leave at noon.

---

7. Our teacher did not teach us English yesterday.

---

8. We must not use the computer.

---

9. He cannot make that model.

---

10. You are not requested to read aloud.

---

11. The prisoner was not killed by anyone.

---

12. He did not ask anybody to stay.

---

13. Mary ought not to answer my question.

---

14. She does not give him anything to do.

---

15. Children do not like toys.

---

### THE CHANGES OF A SENTENCE INTO INTERROGATIVE

( 普通句轉為疑問句 )

#### 1. Sentences with auxiliary or modal verbs 有助動詞的句子 :-

Put the auxiliary or modal verbs before the subject and add '?' at the end.

Sentence ( 普通句 )	Question ( 疑問句 )
a. She <u>is</u> cooking rice.	<u>Is</u> she cooking rice?
b. He <u>was</u> working.	<u>Was</u> he working?
c. I <u>have</u> seen that book before.	<u>Have</u> I seen that book before?
d. They <u>will</u> do it again.	<u>Will</u> they do it again?
e. We <u>can</u> sing well.	<u>Can</u> we sing well?

2. Sentences without Auxiliary Verbs ( 沒有助動詞的句子。 ) :-

i. Simple Present Tense ( 簡單現在式時態。 )

Put 'Do' ( I, We, subject in first person or in plural ) or 'Does' ( He, She, subject in singular ) before the subject and '?' at the end.

	<u>Sentence</u>	<u>Question</u>
a.	I <u>cook</u> rice every day.	Do I <u>cook</u> rice every day?
b.	We <u>know</u> the answer.	Do we <u>know</u> the answer?
c.	The boys <u>play</u> together.	Do the boys <u>play</u> together?
d.	She <u>works</u> very hard.	Does she <u>work</u> very hard?
e.	He always <u>gets</u> up late.	Does he always <u>get</u> up late?
f.	The boy <u>goes</u> to school on foot.	Does the boy <u>go</u> to school on foot?

ii. Simple Past Tense ( 簡單過去式時態。 )

Put 'Did' before the subject, change the verb into present form and put '?' at the end .

	<u>Sentence</u>	<u>Question</u>
a.	We <u>knew</u> the answer.	Did we <u>know</u> the answer?
b.	I <u>stood</u> on the desk.	Did I <u>stand</u> on the desk?
c.	She <u>clapped</u> her hands.	Did she <u>clap</u> her hands?
d.	He <u>slept</u> soundly last night.	Did he <u>sleep</u> soundly last night?
e.	The boy <u>cried</u> loudly.	Did the boy <u>cry</u> loudly?

3. Sentences with 'some' , 'something' , etc. :-

Change 'some', 'something' into 'any', 'anything'.

句子中有'some', 'someone'轉為問句時，將'some', 'someone'改為'any', 'anything'.

	<u>Sentence</u>	<u>Question</u>
a.	They took <u>some</u> lamps.	Did they take <u>any</u> lamps?
b.	She saw <u>something</u> beautiful.	Did she see <u>anything</u> beautiful?
c.	They need <u>someone</u> to help.	Do they need <u>anyone</u> to help?

4. Sentences with 'never' :-

Change 'never' into 'ever' .

句子中有 'never' 要轉為問句時，將 'never' 轉為 'ever' 。

	<u>Sentence</u>	<u>Question</u>
a.	Our teacher <u>never</u> tells lies.	Does our teacher <u>ever</u> tell lies?
b.	He has <u>never</u> been to Japan.	Has he <u>ever</u> been to Japan?

## EXERCISE 59

*Change the following sentences into questions:*

1. He is afraid of his teacher.

---

2. We obey our parents.

---

3. The baby will be able to walk.

---

4. Her cat catches the mouse.

---

5. You need somebody's help.

---

6. This tiger is a very fierce animal.

---

7. I must write some e-mails today.

---

8. They will listen to their teacher.

---

9. He paid twenty dollars for the DVD.

---

10. We have done our homework.

---

11. The workers are building a house.

---

12. I have never done anything wrong.

# CLOSE-ENDED AND OPEN-ENDED QUESTIONS

## (封閉式和開放式疑問句)

### CLOSE-ENDED QUESTIONS (封閉式疑問句)

1. 'Yes' and 'No' answers are used for close-ended questions which are asked with auxiliary and modal verbs like 'is', 'can', 'will', 'have', 'did', etc.

「封閉式疑問句」用助動詞 'is', 'can', 'will', 'have', 'did', 等來問問題，可用 'Yes' 或 'No' 作簡答。

	<u>Close-ended Question</u>	<u>Answer ( Full )</u> 全答	<u>Answer ( Short )</u> 簡答
e.g.	Are you coming?	Yes, I am coming. No, I ain't coming.	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
1.	Is he kind?	Yes, he is kind. No, he isn't kind.	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
2.	Will you be late?	Yes, I will be late. No, I won't be late.	Yes, I will. No, I won't.
3.	Can she swim?	Yes, she can swim. No, she can't swim.	Yes, she can. No, she can't.
4.	Have you called him?	Yes, I have called him. No, I haven't called him.	Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
5.	Do you play football?	Yes, I play football. No, I don't play football.	Yes, I do. No, I don't.
6.	Does she live in Shatin?	Yes, she lives in Shatin. No, she doesn't live in Shatin.	Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.
7.	Did he give you his password?	Yes, he gave me his password. No, he didn't give me his password.	Yes, he did. No, he didn't.
8.	Could you pass me the duster?	Yes, I could pass you the duster. No, I could not pass you the duster.	Yes, I could. No, I couldn't.

## OPEN-ENDED QUESTIONS (開放式疑問句)

Open-ended questions begin with interrogative adverbs and interrogative pronouns like 'who', 'what', etc. and cannot be answered with 'yes' or 'no'.

「開放式疑問句」用疑問副詞( How, Where, Why, When ) 和疑問代名詞 ( What, Who, Which, Whom, Whose) 發問問題，不可以用 'Yes' 或 'No' 作簡答。

1. Here are some common interrogatives:-

a. "**What**" is used when the answer refers to the name of a thing.

當答案指出物件的名稱時，問句用 'what' 。

e.g. 1. What did he buy? → He bought a cake.

2. What is this? → This is a book.

b. "**When**" is used when an answer tells us the time of an action to be completed.

當答案告訴我們完成動作的時間時，問句用 'When' 。

e.g. 1. When did he sail to Lantao Island?

He sailed to Lantao Island last night.

c. "**Where**" is used when the answer refers to the name of a place.

當答案指出地點時，問句用 'Where' 。

e.g. 1. Where is he going? → He is going to visit the

Ocean Park.

2. Where did you play? → We played in our house.

d. "**Which**" is used when an answer refers to the name of a person or thing among a group of persons or things.

當答案指出一羣人或一堆東西中之一人或一件東西時，問句用 'Which' 。

e.g. 1. Which is the book that she wants?

Harry Potter is the book that she wants.

e. "**Who**" is used when the answer refers to the name of a person who does an action.

當答案表示做動作者的名字時，問句便用 'Who' 。

e.g. 1. Who told you? → John told me.

- f. "**Whom**" is used when an answer refers to the name of a person who receives an action.

當答案表示了接受動作者的名字時，問句用 'Whom' 。

e.g. 1. Whom did you give the book to?  
I gave the book to John.

- g. "**Whose**" is used when an answer refers to a person who possesses something.

當答案表示了一個人具有一種東西時，問句用 'Whose' 。

e.g. 1. Whose pencil is this?  
This pencil is mine.

- h. "**Why**" is used when an answer tells the reason for which an action is done.

當答案表示做某動作的原因時，問句用 'Why' 。

e.g. 1. Why couldn't he go to school?  
He could not go to school because he was ill.

- i. "**How**" is used when an answer tells the manner of doing an action.

當答案表示了做動作的態度時，問句用 'How' 。

e.g. 1. How did he kill the man?  
He killed the man suddenly.

- j. "**How many**" is used when an answer tells us the number of persons or things.

當答案表示了人或物的數目時，問句用 'How many' 。

e.g. 1. How many books has he read this week?  
He has read five books this week.

- k. "**How many times**" is used when an answer tells us the number of times an action has been done.

當答案表示了動作的次數時，問句用 'How many times' 。

e.g. 1. How many times has he been to the Repulse Bay?  
He has been to the Repulse Bay three times.

- I. "How often" is used when an answer shows the number of times an action has been done within a certain period of time.  
當答案表示了動作在一段時間內做了多少次，問句用'How often'。

e.g. 1. How often do you go to an online café?  
I go to an online café six times a week.

2. Besides, "How long", "How old", "How far" are also used as interrogatives.  
除上列之外，'How long', 'How old', 'How far' 也可以作發問之用。

## EXERCISE 60

Complete the questions with the words given.

1. I have heard of his success.

What \_\_\_\_\_

2. This is my letter.

Whose \_\_\_\_\_

3. He was about eighty years old.

How \_\_\_\_\_

4. He ran with all his might.

How \_\_\_\_\_

5. No, I do not know why he left us.

Do \_\_\_\_\_

6. His income was fourteen thousand dollars per month.

How much \_\_\_\_\_

7. They were grateful to him because he was kind.

Why \_\_\_\_\_

8. I go to the Central Library once a week.

How often \_\_\_\_\_

9. There are twenty boys in the room.

How many \_\_\_\_\_

10. Peter read Tom's book yesterday.

Who \_\_\_\_\_

11. I spoke to the old man this morning.

Whom \_\_\_\_\_

12. The red pencil is the longest.

Which \_\_\_\_\_

13. Peter lives in Causeway Bay.

Where \_\_\_\_\_

14. He has been told a hundred times.

How many times \_\_\_\_\_

15. He was absent because he was ill.

Why \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 61

*Fill in the blanks with the following words:*

Where	When	How	Why	How many
What	Who	Whom	Which	Whose

1. \_\_\_\_\_ do you get up every day?

*At eight o'clock.*

2. \_\_\_\_\_ do you live?

*I live in Chai Wan.*

3. \_\_\_\_\_ brothers have you got?

*Three.*

4. \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to school?

*By bus.*

5. \_\_\_\_\_ subject do you like best?

*English.*

6. \_\_\_\_\_ were you absent yesterday?

*I was sick.*

7. \_\_\_\_\_ goes to school with you?

*My brother.*

8. \_\_\_\_\_ school bag is this?  
*Hers.*
9. With \_\_\_\_\_ do you go to school?  
*With my brother.*
10. \_\_\_\_\_ will you do after school?  
*Cycling.*

## EXERCISE 62

*Write the questions to which the following sentences are answers.*

1. Peter is the tallest boy in the class.

---

2. We go to school by bus.

---

3. This book costs forty dollars.

---

4. I am twelve years old.

---

5. He has got a lot of money.

---

6. He has been there ten times.

---

7. Peter goes to visit his uncle once a week.

---

8. This pretty dress is mine.

---

9. He is playing with his sisters.

---

10. I take vitamins three times a day.

---

## QUESTION TAGS (Tail-Questions) ( 附加疑問句 )

Question tag is another kind of question. The statement before the tag is the expecting answer of the person who asks, and the question tag is used to ask for the agreement of the person whom he asks.

「附加疑問句」是另一種問句形式。在「附加疑問句」前的敘述句是發問者預計得到的回答。「附加疑問句」是用於要求被問者的同意。

■ If the statement is affirmative, the Question Tag is negative.  
( 若果敘述句是肯定句，「附加疑問句」是否定句。 )

- e.g. 1. It is a rainy day, isn't it?
- 2. It was my fault, wasn't it?
- 3. We are Chinese, aren't we?
- 4. She can cook well, can't she?
- 5. Peter gets up early, doesn't he?
- 6. They know many words, don't they?
- 7. The girl lost her way, didn't she?

Note: 'Don't', 'Doesn't' or 'Didn't' is used in the tag when the statement has no auxiliary verb.

■ If the statement is negative, the Question Tag is affirmative.  
( 若果敘述句是否定句，「附加疑問句」是肯定句。 )

- e.g. 1. It isn't a rainy day, is it?
- 2. It wasn't my fault, was it?
- 3. We aren't Chinese, are we?
- 4. She can't cook well, can she?
- 5. Peter doesn't get up early, does he?
- 6. They don't know many words, do they?
- 7. The girl didn't lose her way, did she?

1. For a question formed with an affirmative statement and a negative tag, the expected answer is 'Yes'. e.g. You are Tom, aren't you? Yes, I am.
2. For a question formed with a negative statement and a positive tag, the expected answer is 'No'. e.g. The dog didn't eat, did it? No, it didn't.

## EXERCISE 63

Write the missing words in the blank spaces.

1. Mary is singing, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, she is .
2. They were very sad, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, they were.
3. She likes swimming, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, she does.
4. He isn't very tall, is he? \_\_\_\_\_ No,
5. It's cold today, isn't it? \_\_\_\_\_ Yes,
6. You don't like chocolate, \_\_\_\_\_ No, I don't.
7. He will be late, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, he will.
8. It wasn't so cold yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ No, it wasn't.
9. You live in Wanchai, don't you? \_\_\_\_\_ Yes,
10. It won't be true, will it ? \_\_\_\_\_ No,
11. She's leaving tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, she is.
12. He won't forgive you, \_\_\_\_\_ No, he won't.
13. Peter doesn't go to school late, \_\_\_\_\_ No, he doesn't.
14. Auntie Mary has bought a new car, hasn't she? \_\_\_\_\_ Yes,
15. We ought to obey our parents, \_\_\_\_\_ Yes, we ought to.

## EXERCISE 64

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. She will be hungry,  A. will she?  
 B. does she?  
 C. did she?  
 D. won't she?
  
2. She doesn't go to school every day,  A. is she?  
 B. does she?  
 C. will she?  
 D. doesn't she?
  
3. They've been to Taipo before,  A. don't they?  
 B. do they?  
 C. have they?  
 D. haven't they?
  
4. He can draw beautifully,  A. can he?  
 B. can't he?  
 C. isn't he?  
 D. will he?
  
5. The little girl can't swim, can she?  A. No, she can't.  
 B. Yes, she can't.  
 C. Yes, she could.  
 D. No, she couldn't.
  
6. You are cooking rice,  A. are you?  
 B. aren't you?  
 C. can't you?  
 D. won't you?
  
7. This story book is interesting,  A. is it?  
 B. isn't it?  
 C. wasn't it?  
 D. does it?

## DIRECT SPEECH AND INDIRECT SPEECH ( 直接引語和間接引語 )

There are two ways of reporting the words of a speaker, namely, Direct Speech and Indirect Speech.

報導別人說的話，可有兩個方法，那就是「直接引語」和「間接引語」。

In Direct Speech, we quote the original words of the speaker. The actual words of the speaker are put within the "quotation marks" and the first word that the speaker used starts with a capital letter. 在直接引語中，我們把談話者的原用語引用。談話者的原用語應使用引號〈“”〉引敘，並在引號內的第一個字母應使用大寫字母。

In Indirect Speech or Reported Speech, the actual words of the speaker is not given. It is modified and no quotation marks are necessary. The original words of the speaker are changed into different forms, but its original meaning is kept.

「間接引語」或「報告引語」是不把談話者的原用語寫出，而將它修飾後再寫出。「間接引語」是不用引號的。說話的意思和原用語一樣，不過談話者所說的話卻用另一個方法寫出。

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| e.g. | 1. Direct speech: John said, "I am hungry."<br>Indirect speech: John said that he was hungry.                                    |
| 2.   | Direct speech: Mary said, "My mother works in the library."<br>Indirect speech: Mary said that her mother worked in the library. |

### Statements ( 敘述語 )

Note the following changes when making indirect statements:

將「直接引語」變為「間接引語」時，下列四點敘述語的變動一定要緊記：

1. The conjunction "that" is generally put before indirect statement.  
連接詞 'that' 通常放在間接敘述語之前。

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| e.g. | Direct speech: She said, "I am sick."<br>Indirect speech: She said <u>that</u> she was sick. |
|------|--|

2. All pronouns have to be changed into third person.

所有代名詞要轉變為第三人稱。

In Direct Statements 直接敘述語	In Indirect Statements 間接敘述語
I	he/she
me	him/her
mine	his/hers
my	his/her
we	they
us	them
our	their
they	they
you	he/she, him/her, I/me, them/they, us

3. All tenses of the Direct Speech are changed into the corresponding past tense when the past is referred to.

所有「直接引語」中應用的時態，在轉變為「間接引語」時，應轉為同一性質的過去式時態。

a. Simple Present becomes Simple Past.

e.g. Direct: She said, "I am sick."  
Indirect: She said that she was sick.

b. Present Continuous becomes Past Continuous.

e.g. Direct: John said, "I am going to school."  
Indirect: John said that he was going to school.

c. Present Perfect becomes Past Perfect.

e.g. Direct: Mother said, "I have written a letter."  
Indirect: Mother said that she had written a letter.

d. Simple Past becomes Past Perfect.

e.g. Direct: He said, "I ate the cake in the morning."  
Indirect: He said that he had eaten the cake in the morning.

e. "Will" becomes "would". ( "Shall" becomes "should". )

- e.g. 1. Direct: He said, "I shall help you."  
Indirect: He said that he should help me.
2. Direct: John said, "Mr. Chan will visit me tomorrow."  
Indirect: John said that Mr. Chan would visit him the next day.

f. "May" becomes "might". ( "Can" becomes "could". )

- e.g. 1. Direct: She said, "I may go to the party."  
Indirect: She said that she might go to the party.
2. Direct: Becky said, "I can sing well."  
Indirect: Becky said that she could sing well.

g. "Must" becomes "had to".

- e.g. Direct: She said, "I must go before lunch."  
Indirect: She said that she had to go before lunch.

h. Only Past Perfect remains the same:

- e.g. Direct: They said to me, "We had done our job."  
Indirect: They said to me that they had done their job.

Note that the tenses in an indirect statement will remain in the present tense when:

在下列情形，「直接引語」轉變為「間接引語」時，時態保持不變。

( i ). The statement expresses a general truth.

「敘述語」表示一種不變的事實。

- e.g. Direct: The teacher explained, "The sun rises in the east."  
Indirect: The teacher explained that the sun rises in the east.

( ii ). The verb that introduces or concludes the direct statement is in the present or future tense.

動詞用現在式和未來式時態作引出或結尾的「直接敘述語」。

- e.g. 1. Direct: Benny says, "I like my mother's painting."  
Indirect: Benny says she likes her mother's painting.
2. Direct: She will say, "I can't do it."  
Indirect: She will say she cannot do it.

4. Other necessary changes are as follows:- 其他轉變如下:-

In Direct Statements	In Indirect Statements
This	That
Now	Then
These	Those
Here	There
Thus	So
Ago	Before
Today	That day
Tomorrow	The next day
Tomorrow morning	The next morning
Yesterday	The previous day / The day before
Last night	The night before
Come	Go

## EXERCISE 65

*Change the following sentences into indirect speech:*

1. Peter said, "I am glad to meet my uncle now."  
Peter said that he \_\_\_\_\_
2. My mother said, "We are going to have a picnic this weekend."  
My mother said that we \_\_\_\_\_
3. The woman told the nurse, "Come close to me, please."  
The woman told the nurse \_\_\_\_\_
4. He said, "I lost my uniform yesterday."  
He said that he \_\_\_\_\_
5. Mary said, "I shall be nine years old tomorrow."  
Mary said that she \_\_\_\_\_
6. Her maid said, "I wash my clothes before I go to bed."  
Her maid said she \_\_\_\_\_
7. The beggars said, "We have nothing to eat these few days."  
The beggars said that they \_\_\_\_\_

8. I told my father, "The moon moves round the earth."  
I told my father that \_\_\_\_\_
9. She said, "I am cleaning the blackboard now."  
She said that she \_\_\_\_\_
10. Mother tells Peter, "You may put on your new shirt."  
Mother tells Peter that \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 66

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. Mary said, "I have made a new dress."  
Mary said that       A. she made a new dress.  
                           B. she had made a new dress.  
                           C. she has made a new dress.  
                           D. I had made a new dress.
2. The old man said, "I must sleep early."  
The old man said that       A. he must sleep early.  
                           B. he has to sleep early.  
                           C. he had slept early.  
                           D. he had to sleep early.
3. The boys said to the teacher, "We can play football very well."  
The boys told the teacher that       A. they could play football very well.  
                           B. we could play football very well.  
                           C. they played football very well.  
                           D. they can play football very well.
4. Peter said to Mary, "I know you and your sister."  
Peter told Mary that       A. he knows him and his sister.  
                           B. he knew her and her sister.  
                           C. he knew him and his sister.  
                           D. he has known him and his sister.

5. My mother said sadly, 'The dog died in the morning.'
- My mother said sadly that
- A. the dog died in the morning.  
 B. the cat died in the morning.  
 C. the dog has died in the morning.  
 D. the dog had died in the morning.
6. The fisherman said, " I'll go to see my son today. "
- The fisherman said that
- A. he goes to see his son that day.  
 B. he went to see his son that day.  
 C. he will go to see his son today.  
 D. he would go to see his son that day.
7. The girl said, "I am going to school now."
- The girl said that
- A. she went to school then.  
 B. she was going to school now.  
 C. she is going to school then.  
 D. she was going to school then.
8. Mr. Brown said to us, "I can teach you Chinese."
- Mr. Brown said to us that
- A. he teaches us Chinese.  
 B. she can teach us Chinese.  
 C. could teach us Chinese.  
 D. he could teach us Chinese.
9. My uncle says, "I like to live in Hong Kong."
- My uncle says that
- A. he likes to live in Hong Kong.  
 B. he will like to live in Hong Kong.  
 C. he liked to leave Hong Kong.  
 D. she doesn't like to live in Hong Kong.
10. My little brother said, "Dinosaurs were the biggest animals on land."
- My little brother said that
- A. dinosaurs were the biggest animals on land.  
 B. dinosaurs were the biggest animals on land.  
 C. dinosaurs had been the biggest animals on land.  
 D. dinosaurs might be the biggest animals on land.

## ■ Questions ( 疑問語 )

In Indirect Questions, alteration of tenses and pronouns are the same as in Indirect Statements. Moreover, when the interrogative form is changed into the statement form, the question mark '?' is changed into full stop '.'.

將句子改變為「間接疑問語」時，時態和代名詞的變法和將句子改為「間接敘述語」的方法一樣。此外，將疑問句轉為敘述句形式時，要將問號「?」改為句號「.」。

Here are some rules:- ( 下面是一些原則： )

1. When the Question is introduced by an auxiliary or modal verb e.g. Do, Are, Can, Will, etc., the conjunctions "if" or "whether" must be put before the Indirect Question.

「 疑問語 」若是由助動詞，例如 Do, Are, Can, Will 等引出時，連接詞 'if' 或 'whether' 一定要放在「間接疑問語」之前。

e.g. 1. Direct:	The teacher said, "Do you know the answer to the question?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	The teacher asked <u>whether</u> they knew the answer to the question.
e.g. 2. Direct:	The teacher said to Mary, "Are you happy?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	The teacher asked Mary <u>if</u> she was happy.
e.g. 3. Direct:	I said to my brother, "Did you break the bottle?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	I asked my brother <u>if</u> he had broken the bottle.
e.g. 4. Direct:	My mother said to me, "Can you cook rice?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	My mother asked me <u>if</u> I could cook rice.

2. When the Question is introduced by a question word, e.g. when, where, how, why, who, whom, what, etc. the same word is put before the Indirect Question.

「 疑問語 」若是由疑問詞，例如 'When', 'Where', 'How', 'Why', 'Who', 'Whom', 'What' 等引出時，這些疑問詞一定要放在「間接疑問語」之前。

e.g. 1. Direct:	"What are you writing?" he asked.
<u>Indirect:</u>	He asked me <u>what</u> I was writing.
e.g. 2. Direct:	I asked my uncle, "When do you usually get up?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	I asked my uncle <u>when</u> he usually got up.
e.g. 3. Direct:	The stranger asked me, "Where did you live?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	The stranger asked me <u>where</u> I had lived.
e.g. 4. Direct:	Peter asks his brother, "How do you insert pictures in the word document?"
<u>Indirect:</u>	Peter asks his brother <u>how</u> he inserts pictures in the word document.

## EXERCISE 67

*Change the following sentences into indirect speech.*

1. Mary asked Tom, "Do you like to play with me?"

Mary asked Tom \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. "Why do you get up so early?" he asked me.

He asked me \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. The teacher asked the boy, "Can you clean the table?"

The teacher asked the boy \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. She asked my uncle, "Where did you put your umbrella?"

She asked my uncle \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. The small boy asked his mother, "May I have a pair of new shoes?"

The small boy asked his mother \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. The old lady asked me, "What time is it now?"

The old lady asked me \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. Miss Lee asked Peter, "Have you finished your work?"

Miss Lee asked Peter \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. He asked the girl, "Where are you going tomorrow morning?"

He asked the girl \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. The man said to John, "Will you go or not?"

The man asked John \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. A boy said to me, "Can I borrow your book?"

A boy asked me \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 68

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. The teacher said to me, "Have you brought your dictionary?"

- A. if I had brought my dictionary.
- B. if I have brought my dictionary.
- C. if he had brought my dictionary.
- D. if I had brought your dictionary.

The teacher asked me

2. He said to Mary, "Are you working now?"

- A. if she is working now.
- B. if she was working then.
- C. if he was working now.
- D. if he was working then.

He asked Mary

3. The teacher said to Peter, "What is the name of the lake?"

- A. what the name of the lake is.
- B. what was the name of the lake.
- C. what the name of the lake was.
- D. what is the name of the lake.

The teacher asked Peter

4. The policeman said to me, "Where are you going?"

- A. where he was going.
- B. where you are going.
- C. where was I going.
- D. where I was going.

The policeman asked me

5. We said to Tom, "How many were injured in this accident?"
- We asked Tom
- A. how many were injured in that accident.
  - B. how many injured in this accident.
  - C. how many had injured in this accident.
  - D. how many had been injured in that accident.
6. He asks, "Are you here, Tom?"
- He asks Tom
- A. whether he is there.
  - B. whether he was here.
  - C. whether is he.
  - D. whether he is here.
7. He said, "Mary, when will you do it?"
- He asked Mary
- A. when she would do it.
  - B. when she does it.
  - C. when she will do it.
  - D. when did she do it.
8. Mrs. Brown said to Tom, "Do you know how to row a boat?"
- Mrs. Brown asked Tom
- A. if she knew how to row a boat.
  - B. if he knows how to row a boat.
  - C. if he knew how to row a boat.
  - D. if I knew how to row a boat.
9. Tom said to Mary, "How do you go to Tuen Mun?"
- Tom asked Mary
- A. how he went to Tuen Mun.
  - B. how she went to Tuen Mun.
  - C. how she has goes to Tuen Mun.
  - D. how she has gone to Tuen Mun.
10. Mrs. Chan said to us, "Who was playing computer game last night?"
- Mrs. Chan asked us
- A. who was playing computer game last night.
  - B. who played computer game last night.
  - C. who had been playing computer game last night.
  - D. who had been playing computer game the night before.

## Commands and Requests (命令和請求)

In changing Direct Commands or Requests into Indirect Commands or Requests, the verb in the Imperative Mood is changed into the Infinitive Mood.

當「直接命令」或「直接請求語氣」轉變為「間接命令」或「間接請求語氣」時，要將動詞的「祈使語氣」轉變為「不定式語氣」。

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| e.g. 1. Direct: "Go out," he said.                                     |  |
| Indirect: He told <u>me</u> <u>to go out</u> .                         |  |
| e.g. 2. Direct: The teacher said, "Don't talk in class."               |  |
| Indirect: The teacher told <u>us</u> <u>not to talk</u> in class.      |  |
| e.g. 3. Direct: She said to him, "Please wait for me."                 |  |
| Indirect: She requested <u>him</u> <u>to wait</u> for her.             |  |
| e.g. 4. Direct: The man said to Peter, "Bring me a cup of tea."        |  |
| Indirect: The man asked <u>Peter</u> <u>to bring</u> him a cup of tea. |  |
| e.g. 5. Direct: He begged, "Don't make any noise."                     |  |
| Indirect: He begged <u>us</u> <u>not to make</u> any noise.            |  |

## EXERCISE 69

*Change the following sentences into indirect speech:*

1. The teacher said to the class, "Stand up."

The teacher told the class \_\_\_\_\_

2. She shouted at them, "Let me go."

She shouted at them \_\_\_\_\_

3. The manager said to me, "Come to my office, please."

The manager requested me \_\_\_\_\_

4. Mary said to us, "Go away."

Mary told us \_\_\_\_\_

5. The police officer said to the man, "Give me your knife."

The police officer ordered the man \_\_\_\_\_

6. The sergeant said to the soldiers, "Come here!"

The sergeant ordered the soldiers \_\_\_\_\_

7. Peter said to Mary, "Don't clean the blackboard, please."

Peter asked Mary \_\_\_\_\_

8. The headmaster said to me, "Come in."

The headmaster \_\_\_\_\_

9. The beggar begged, "Give me a dollar, please."

The beggar \_\_\_\_\_

10. I said to Peter, "Open all the windows."

I \_\_\_\_\_



### Exclamations and Wishes (驚歎和願望)

In reporting Exclamations and Wishes, the indirect speech is introduced by 'shouted', 'exclaimed', 'said' or 'wished' according to the degree of stress to be expressed.

將「直接驚歎」和「直接希望語」轉變為「間接語」時，應按照語氣的程度而使用 'shouted', 'exclaimed', 'said' 或 'wished' 。

e.g. 1. Direct: The hunters said, "Hurrah! The tiger is dead."  
Indirect: The hunters shouted that the tiger was dead.

e.g. 2. Direct: He said, "How clever my sister is!"  
Indirect: He said how clever his sister was.

e.g. 3. Direct: The man said, "Alas! I have lost my lovely dog."  
Indirect: The man exclaimed that he had lost his lovely dog.

## EXERCISE 70

Change the following sentences from indirect speech into direct speech:

1. The visitor asked the guide where he could find a taxi.

The visitor said to the guide, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. My uncle asked me if I was happy during my holiday.

My uncle said to me, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Peter shouts to his brother not to tear his book.

Peter shouts to his brother, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Mary said that she had lost her purse.

Mary said, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. We asked our aunt when she would leave.

We said to our aunt, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Tom asked Mary how her father was.

Tom said to Mary, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. My sister asked me what I had done to her laptop.

My sister asked me, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. We shouted with joy that our team had won the game.

We exclaimed, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

9. The woman said that she was cooking in the kitchen then.

The woman said, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

10. The teacher asked Mary if she was thirsty.

The teacher said, \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE (主動語態和被動語態)

A sentence is in the active voice when the 'doer' of the action is the subject and the 'receiver' is the object of the sentence.

一個句子屬「主動語態」，它的'實行者'是主詞而'接受者'是受詞。

A sentence is in the passive voice when the 'receiver' of the action is the subject and the 'doer' is the object of the sentence.

一個句子屬「被動語態」，它的'接受者'是主詞而'實行者'是受詞。

e.g.

Voice 語態	Subject 主詞	Action (verb) 行動(動詞)	Object 受詞
Active	The cat (doer)	killed	the mouse.
Passive	The mouse (receiver)	was killed	by the cat.

When do we use the passive voice? (何時運用被動語態？)

We use the passive voice when:

1. The 'doer' is unknown or too general.

e.g. My car was stolen last night.

2. The 'doer' is probably known.

e.g. The fire was put out in an hour.

(The doer is probably the fire fighters.)

3. The 'doer' is not important.

e.g. The museum was built 100 years ago by some prisoners.

(The action / time is more important than the doer.)

### The Ways to Form the Passive Voice

(「主動語態」轉為「被動語態」的方法)

Note the following when changing a sentence from the Active to Passive Voice:

將句子的「主動語態」轉變為「被動語態」時，下列的重點一定要牢記：

1. The sentence in the active voice must contain a subject and an object.  
「主動語態」的句子中一定要包括一個主詞和一個受詞。
2. The subject is changed into the object and the object is changed into the subject.

將主詞變受詞，受詞變主詞。

3. The word "**by**" must be added before the object. However, sentences written in the passive voice often have the 'doer' omitted.  
 'by' 一定要放在受詞之前。在「被動語態」句子中，時常刻意地將'實行者'省略。
4. A suitable "verb to be" ( i.e. is, are, am, was were, be, been, being ) must be added to the verb.  
 在動詞前加上適當的 'be 動詞' ( is, are, am, was, were, be, been, being )。
- Simple Present Tense + **is, are, or am**.
  - Simple Past Tense + **was or were**.
  - Continuous Tense + **being**.
  - Present Perfect Tense + **been**.
  - Future Tense + **be**.
5. The verb in the Passive Voice must be in the Past Participle form.  
 在「被動語態」中，動詞一定是過去分詞。

### Form the Passive Voice in Different Tenses

「主動語態」轉變為「被動語態」時，不同時態的轉變方法。

#### 1. Simple Present Tense ( is, are, am + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. I kill the tiger.	The tiger <u>is killed</u> by me.
2. John cuts the cake into pieces.	The cake <u>is cut</u> into pieces by John.
3. They always laugh at Dora.	Dora <u>is always laughed at</u> .

#### 2. Simple Past Tense ( was, were + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. I wrote a complaint letter.	A complaint letter <u>was written</u> by me.
2. She designed a new computer game.	A new computer game <u>was designed</u> by her.
3. The farmers killed the tiger.	The tiger <u>was killed</u> by the farmers.
4. Mary did not hit the boys.	The boys <u>were not hit</u> by Mary.

## EXERCISE 71

*Change the following sentences into the passive voice. You are given the beginning of each new sentence. Omit the 'doer' when necessary.*

1. He tested a new car yesterday.

A new car was \_\_\_\_\_

2. They ran the cafe 24 hours a day.

The cafe is \_\_\_\_\_

3. The police arrested a thief.

A thief \_\_\_\_\_

4. The burglar broke the window.

The window \_\_\_\_\_

5. They built a new house.

A new house \_\_\_\_\_

6. You did not shut the doors.

The doors \_\_\_\_\_

7. All the students enjoy the Christmas Show.

The Christmas Show \_\_\_\_\_

8. They took me to the party.

I \_\_\_\_\_

9. The class monitor distributes the workbooks to the class.

The workbooks \_\_\_\_\_

10. These farmers grew those vegetables.

Those vegetables \_\_\_\_\_

3. Present/Past Continuous Tense (is, am, are, being ... + the past participle)

<u>Active Voice</u> (主動語態)	<u>Passive Voice</u> (被動語態)
1. I am eating some lychees.	Some lychees are <u>being eaten</u> by me.
2. He was throwing a stone.	A stone <u>was being thrown</u> by him.
3. The naughty kids are wasting water.	Water <u>is being wasted</u> by the naughty kids.
4. We were painting the classrooms.	The classrooms <u>were being painted</u> by us.
5. You are singing a song.	A song <u>is being sung</u> by you.
6. Tom is killing the snakes.	The snakes <u>are being killed</u> by Tom.
7. The woman was feeding the ducks.	The ducks <u>were being fed</u> by the woman.

## EXERCISE 72

Change the following sentence into the passive voice. Omit the 'doer' where necessary.

1. The nurses are carrying the babies.

The babies are \_\_\_\_\_

2. I am baking a cake.

A cake \_\_\_\_\_

3. They were cleaning the floor.

The floor was \_\_\_\_\_

4. The postman is delivering letters to us.

Letters \_\_\_\_\_

5. The children were fixing a jigsaw puzzle.

A jigsaw puzzle \_\_\_\_\_

6. Judy is writing the proposal.

The proposal \_\_\_\_\_

7. The man was hitting the dog cruelly.

The dog \_\_\_\_\_

8. The farmer is sowing seeds.

Seeds \_\_\_\_\_

9. My father is telling a story.

A story \_\_\_\_\_

10. The workers were fixing the pipe.

The pipe \_\_\_\_\_

#### 4. Present Perfect Tense ( has / have been + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. She has broken a glass.	A glass <u>has been broken</u> by her.
2. That man has driven many cars.	Many cars <u>have been driven</u> by that man.
3. I have written the letter.	The letter <u>has been written</u> by me.
4. They have built a new house.	A new house <u>has been built</u> by them.
5. She has eaten all the bread.	All the bread <u>has been eaten</u> by her.
6. He has washed the clothes.	The clothes <u>have been washed</u> by him.

## EXERCISE 73

*Change the following sentences into the passive voice:*

1. The boy has kept the secret.

The secret has \_\_\_\_\_

2. I have helped Tom.

Tom has \_\_\_\_\_

3. She has done her work.

Her work has \_\_\_\_\_

4. They have bought ten books.

Ten books \_\_\_\_\_

5. He has broken the window.

The window \_\_\_\_\_

6. You have boiled the water.

The water \_\_\_\_\_

7. Peter has drawn a square.

A square \_\_\_\_\_

8. He has shut the door.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. We have shown him a picture.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. The fairy gave the honest carpenter a golden axe.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Past Perfect Tense ( had been + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. He had kicked the ball before the referee blew the whistle.	The ball <u>had been kicked</u> by him before the referee blew the whistle.
2. They had washed the clothes before they went out.	The clothes <u>had been washed</u> (by them) before they went out.

## EXERCISE 74

Change the following sentences into the passive voice. Omit the 'doer' when necessary.

1. Tom had found the books.

The books had \_\_\_\_\_

2. I had given her a bunch of roses.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The helper had washed the clothes.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. They had done their work.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. You had broken your ankle.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Simple Future Tense ( will / shall be + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. My grandmother will wash the clothes.	The clothes <u>will be washed</u> by my grandmother.
2. The villagers will kill the tiger.	The tiger <u>will be killed</u> by the villagers.
3. Mary will buy that purse.	That purse <u>will be bought</u> by Mary.

## EXERCISE 75

Change the following sentences into the passive voice:

1. He will get the prize.

The prize will \_\_\_\_\_

2. I shall make a present for my brother.

A present for my brother will \_\_\_\_\_

3. My mom will buy a new car.

A new car \_\_\_\_\_

4. The nurse will wash the baby.

The baby \_\_\_\_\_

5. We shall lend Mary a book.

Mary \_\_\_\_\_

6. The dog will bite everyone.

Everyone \_\_\_\_\_

7. I shall drive my car.

My car \_\_\_\_\_

8. Peter will help us.

We \_\_\_\_\_

9. The workman will finish the repair.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. The swallow will build a nest.

\_\_\_\_\_

## Commands or Requests ( 命令或請求 )

Active Voice ( 主動語態 )	Passive Voice ( 被動語態 )
1. Come in, please.	You are <u>requested</u> to come in.
2. Read loudly.	You are <u>asked</u> to read loudly.
3. Put up your hands.	You are <u>told</u> to put up your hands.
4. Don't shut the window.	You are <u>told not to</u> shut the window.
5. Don't make such a noise.	You are <u>asked not to</u> make such a noise.

## Questions ( 問題 )

### 1. Simple Present Tense ( verb to be: is, am, are + the past participle )

Active Voice ( 主動語態 )	Passive Voice ( 被動語態 )
1. Do you allow smoking here?	<u>Is</u> smoking <u>allowed</u> here?
2. When do you feed your dog?	When <u>is</u> your dog <u>fed</u> ?
3. How many books do you read in a month?	How many books <u>are read</u> in a month?

### 2. Simple Past Tense ( verb to be: was, were + the past participle )

Active Voice ( 主動語態 )	Passive Voice ( 被動語態 )
1. Did he break the vase?	<u>Was</u> the vase <u>broken</u> by him?
2. Where did they keep the equipment?	Where <u>was</u> the equipment <u>kept</u> ?
3. Why did he hit his dog?	Why <u>was</u> his dog <u>hit</u> by him?
4. Whose purse did the thief steal?	Whose purse <u>was stolen</u> by the thief?
5. Who made this mistake?	By whom <u>was</u> this mistake <u>made</u> ?

### 3. Simple Future Tense ( will / shall be + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. Will you send out the mail?	<u>Will</u> the mail <u>be sent out</u> ?
2. Will they cancel the flight?	<u>Will</u> the flight <u>be cancelled</u> ?
3. When will you make the decision?	When <u>will</u> the decision <u>be made</u> ?

### 4. Present/Past Perfect Tense

( has / have / had been + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. Have you read the book?	<u>Has</u> the book <u>been read</u> ?
2. Who has done the work?	By whom <u>has</u> the work <u>been done</u> ?
3. What has she done?	What <u>has been done</u> by her?
4. Whose book has he taken?	Whose book <u>has been taken</u> by him?
5. Had you washed the clothes before you went out ?	<u>Had</u> the clothes <u>been washed</u> before you went out?

### 5. Present/Past Continuous Tense

( is, am, are ...being + the past participle )

<u>Active Voice</u> ( 主動語態 )	<u>Passive Voice</u> ( 被動語態 )
1. Are you listening to me?	<u>Am I being listened to</u> ?
2. Are you repairing your house?	<u>Is your house being repaired</u> ?
3. Is the woman washing the clothes?	<u>Are the clothes being washed</u> by the woman?
4. Was the boy cheating the old woman?	<u>Was the woman being cheated</u> by the boy?
5. Were you drawing those pictures?	<u>Were those pictures being drawn</u> by you?

## With a model verb (有助動詞)

( can, must, should ...be + the past participle )

Active Voice (主動語態)	Passive Voice (被動語態)
1. I can do this. 2. You must help him. 3. You should revise the lessons. 4. How can I calculate this sum?	This can <u>be done</u> by me. He must <u>be helped</u> by you. The lessons should <u>be revised</u> . How can this sum <u>be calculated</u> ?

## EXERCISE 76

*Change the following sentences into the passive voice:*

1. Have you found your book?

Has your book \_\_\_\_\_

2. Why did you do such a foolish thing?

Why was such \_\_\_\_\_

3. Did he break the window?

Was the window \_\_\_\_\_

4. Stop that taxi, please.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What can he do?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Who takes care of the baby?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. What will they find?

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Do you sell mobile phones?

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Please turn on the fan.

---

10. Is this sales assistant checking the stock?

---

## EXERCISE 77

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. The policeman caught a thief.

- A. A thief was caught by the policeman.
- B. A thief is caught by the policeman.
- C. A thief catches the policeman.
- D. The thief was caught by a policeman.

2. This SMS is being written by me.

- A. I was writing this SMS.
- B. I am writing this SMS.
- C. I wrote this SMS.
- D. I am writing the SMS.

3. We have asked him a lot of questions.

- A. He had been asked a lot of questions by us.
- B. He was asked a lot of questions by us.
- C. He will be asked a lot of questions by us.
- D. He has been asked a lot of questions by us.

4. The cows give us milk.

- A. We are given milk by the cows.
- B. We were given milk by the cows.
- C. We shall be given milk by the cows.
- D. We are being given milk by the cows.

5. They will sell their old car.
- A. Their old car will sell by them.
  - B. Their old car will be sold by them.
  - C. Their old car will be sold by us.
  - D. Their car will be sold by them.
6. Who stole the jewels?
- A. By whom are the jewels stolen?
  - B. By whom were the jewels being stolen?
  - C. By whom had the jewels been stolen?
  - D. By whom were the jewels stolen?
7. Why is he being followed by her?
- A. Why is she following him?
  - B. Why is he following her?
  - C. Why will she follow him?
  - D. Why does she follow him?
8. Give the book to Mary.
- A. You are requested to give the book.
  - B. You are told to give the book to Mary.
  - C. You told to give the book to Mary.
  - D. You are given the book to Mary.
9. He does not switch on the TV.
- A. The TV does not watch on.
  - B. The TV is switched on by him.
  - C. The TV is not switched on by him.
  - D. The TV is switched on.
10. They are building a bridge across the river.
- A. A bridge was built across the river by them.
  - B. A bridge is being built across the river by them.
  - C. A bridge is built across the river by them.
  - D. A bridge was being built across the river by them.

## EXERCISE 78

***Change the following sentences into the the opposite voice:***

1. Shut your mouth.

You are told \_\_\_\_\_

2. We shall be allowed to come.

They will \_\_\_\_\_

3. He has asked two questions.

Two questions \_\_\_\_\_

4. He is opening the window.

The window is \_\_\_\_\_

5. The boy was bitten by a dog.

A dog \_\_\_\_\_

6. The police officer catches a burglar.

A burglar \_\_\_\_\_

7. Whose book will she take?

Whose book \_\_\_\_\_

8. His friends took him to the party.

He \_\_\_\_\_

9. Why did they do these sums?

Why \_\_\_\_\_

10. His watch has been stolen by a thief.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. The boys were being helped by Tom.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. How can I meet your sister?

\_\_\_\_\_

# FORMATION OF WORDS

## (字的形成)

A word may be used as a noun, a verb, an adjective or an adverb. So it has different forms.

一個字用於句子裏時，它可能用作名詞、動詞、形容詞或副詞。由於詞性不同，因此同一意思的字，其形成便有些不同。

Here are the ways that words change:

1. Nouns are formed from adjectives, verbs, or other nouns which end with suffixes like "-ance, -dom, -hood, -ion, -ment, -ness, -ry, -ship, -th, -ty", etc.
2. Some verbs are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding "be-, en-, -en, -ise", etc.
3. Adjectives may be formed by adding "-able, -al, -ic, -ous, -ious, -ful, -ish, -ive, -en, and -some" to nouns and verbs.
4. Adverbs are formed from nouns, verbs, or adjectives. Most adverbs end with "-ly".

Adjective (形容詞)	Noun (名詞)	Verb (動詞)	Adverb (副詞)
able (有能力)	ability	enable	ably
accidental (意外的)	accident	_____	accidentally
active (活躍的)	action	act	actively
additional (另加的)	addition	add	additionally
agreeable (欣然同意的)	agreement	agree	agreeably
angry (發怒的)	anger	anger	angrily
attentive (注意的)	attention	attend	attentively
beautiful (美麗的)	beauty	beautify	beautifully
believable (可信的)	belief	believe	believably
bitter (痛苦的)	bitterness	embitter	bitterly
black (黑的)	black/ blackness	blacken	blackly
blind (盲的)	blindness	blind	blindly

Adjective (形容詞)	Noun (名詞)	Verb (動詞)	Adverb (副詞)
bloody (血污的)	blood	bleed	bloodily
brave (勇敢的)	bravery	brave	bravely
bright (光明的)	brightness	brighten	brightly
busy (忙碌的)	business	busy	busily
broad (闊的)	breadth	broaden	broadly
calm (平靜的)	calmness	calm	calmly
careful (小心的)	care	care	carefully
changeable (改變的)	change	change	changeably
cheap (便宜的)	cheapness	cheapen	cheaply
cheerful (快樂的)	cheer	cheer	cheerfully
childish (幼稚的)	child/childhood	_____	childishly
clean (清潔的)	cleanliness	clean	cleanly
colourful (有色彩的)	colour	colour	colourfully
comfortable (舒服的)	comfort	comfort	comfortably
comparative (比較性的)	comparison	compare	comparatively
complete (完全的)	completion	complete	completely
continual/ continuous	continuation/ continuity	continue	continually/ continuously
cool (涼快的)	coolness	cool	coolly
correct (正確的)	correction	correct	correctly
courageous (勇敢的)	courage	encourage	courageously
cruel (殘忍的)	cruelty	_____	cruelly
dangerous (危險的)	danger	endanger	dangerously
dark (黑暗的)	dark/ darkness	darken	darkly
dead (已死的)	dead/ death	die	deadly
decisive (確定的)	decision	decide	decisively
deep (深的)	depth	deepen	deeply
descriptive (描寫的)	description	describe	descriptively
different (不同的)	difference	differ	differently
difficult (困難的)	difficulty	_____	difficultly
diligent (勤力的)	diligence	_____	diligently

Adjective (形容詞)	Noun (名詞)	Verb (動詞)	Adverb (副詞)
dirty (骯髒的)	dirt	dirty	dirtyly
distant (遠離的)	distance	_____	distantly
divisible/ divided	division	divide	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
dreamy (心不在焉)	dream	dream	dreamily
dry (乾的)	dryness	dry	drily
dull (愚笨的)	dullness	dull	dully
dusty (鋪滿塵的)	dust	dust	dustily
easy (容易的)	easiness	ease	easily
empty (空的)	emptiness	empty	emptily
enjoyable (令人愉快的)	enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyably
_____	entrance (入口)	enter	_____
equal (相等的)	equal/ equality	equal	equally
_____	examination (考試)	examine	_____
excellent (優良的)	excellence	excel	excellently
expensive (昂貴的)	expense	expend	expensively
explanatory (解釋的)	explanation	explain	explanatorily
fair (公平的)	fairness	_____	fairly
famed/famous (著名的)	fame	_____	famously
fashionable (流行的)	fashion	fashion	fashionably
fearful (可怕的)	fear	fear	fearfully
flat (平坦的)	flatness	flatten	flatly
flying (飛行的)	flight	fly	_____
foolish (愚蠢的)	fool	fool	foolishly
forgetful (健忘的)	forgetfulness	forget	forgetfully
free (自由的)	freedom	free	freely
frequent (時常的)	frequency	frequent	frequently
fresh (新鮮的)	freshness	refresh	freshly
friendly (友善的)	friend/friendship	befriend	_____
frosty (下霜的)	frost	frost	frostily
full (充滿的)	fullness	fill	fully
funny (有趣的)	fun	_____	funnily
generous (慷慨的)	generosity	_____	generously
gentle (文雅的)	gentleness	_____	gently

Adjective (形容詞)	Noun (名詞)	Verb (動詞)	Adverb (副詞)
gigantic (巨大的)	giant	_____	_____
gifted (天賦的)	gift	give	_____
girlish (少女的)	girl	_____	girlishly
glad (高興的)	gladness	gladden	gladly
glorious (光榮的)	glory	glorify	gloriously
good (美好的)	goodness	_____	well
graceful (優雅的)	grace	_____	gracefully
great (偉大的)	greatness	_____	greatly
greedy (貪心的)	greed	_____	greedily
happy (快樂的)	happiness	_____	happily
hard (堅硬的)	hardness	harden	hard/hardly
harmful (有傷害的)	harm	harm	harmfully
hasty (急忙的)	haste	hasten	hastily
hateful (憎恨的)	hatred	hate	hatefully
healthy (健康的)	health	heal	healthily
helpful (有幫助的)	help	help	helpfully
high (高的)	height	heighten	high/highly
hot (熱的)	heat	heat	heatedly
hungry (感到餓的)	hunger	hunger	hungrily
idle (懶閒的)	idleness	idle	idly
imaginative (想像的)	imagination	imagine	imaginatively
imitative (仿效的)	imitation	imitate	imitatively
important (重要的)	importance	_____	importantly
interesting (有趣的)	interest	interest	interestingly
joyful/ enjoyable _____	joy	enjoy	joyfully enjoyably
kind (仁慈的)	kindness	_____	kindly
knowing (機警的)	knowledge	know	knowingly
long/lengthy (冗長的)	length	lengthen	long/lengthily
loud (大聲的)	loudness	_____	loudly/aloud
lovable/ loving/ lovely _____	love	love	lovably/ lovingly
lucky (幸運的)	luck	_____	luckily
movable/ mobile _____	movement/ mobility	move	movably/ movingly
musical (音樂的)	music	_____	musically

Adjective (形容詞)	Noun (名詞)	Verb (動詞)	Adverb (副詞)
narrow (窄的)	narrowness	narrow	narrowly
naughty (頑皮的)	naughtiness	_____	naughtily
near (接近的)	nearness	_____	near / nearly
noisy (嘈雜的)	noise	_____	noisily
obedient (服從的)	obedience	obey	obediently
polite (有禮的)	politeness	_____	politely
present (出席的)	presence	present	presently
proud (驕傲的)	pride	_____	proudly
quick (快捷的)	quickness	quicken	quickly
quiet (靜的)	quietness	quieten	quietly
rich (富有的)	riches/richness	enrich	richly
ripe (成熟的)	ripeness	ripen	riply
sad (憂愁的)	sadness	sadden	sadly
safe (安全的)	safety	save	safely
satisfactory/ satisfied _____	satisfaction	satisfy	satisfactorily
separate _____	separation	separate	separately
shaky (不穩的)	shake	shake	shakily
sharp (尖銳的)	sharpness	sharpen	sharply
short (短的)	shortage	shorten	shortly
sorrowful (悲哀的)	sorrow	sorrow	sorrowfully
stormy (暴風雨的)	storm	storm	stormily
strong (強壯的)	strength	strengthen	strongly
successful (成功的)	success	succeed	successfully
sweet/ sweetish (甜的)	sweet/sweetness	sweeten	sweetly
tame (馴服的)	tameness	tame	tamely
thick (厚的)	thickness	thicken	thickly
thirsty (口渴)	thirst	thirst	thirstily
tidy (整潔的)	tidiness	tidy	tidily
useful/ usable (有用的)	use	use	usefully
warm (溫暖的)	warmth	warm	warmly
weak (弱的)	weakness	weaken	weakly
wealthy (富有的)	wealth	_____	wealthily
weighty (重的)	weight	weigh	weightily
whole (全部的)	whole	_____	wholly
wide (闊的)	width	widen	widely
windy (大風的)	wind	wind	windily
worthy (值得的)	worth/ worthiness	worth	worthily
youthful (年輕的)	youth	_____	youthfully

## EXERCISE 79

*Form nouns from the following words:*

- |                 |       |               |       |
|-----------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| 1. proud        | _____ | 2. angry      | _____ |
| 3. dead         | _____ | 4. central    | _____ |
| 5. busy         | _____ | 6. warm       | _____ |
| 7. quick        | _____ | 8. wide       | _____ |
| 9. beautiful    | _____ | 10. high      | _____ |
| 11. free        | _____ | 12. pleasant  | _____ |
| 13. comfortable | _____ | 14. cool      | _____ |
| 15. brave       | _____ | 16. alive     | _____ |
| 17. able        | _____ | 18. agreeable | _____ |
| 19. glorious    | _____ | 20. cheap     | _____ |

## EXERCISE 80

*Form adjectives from the following verbs:*

- |               |       |              |       |
|---------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| 1. brighten   | _____ | 2. use       | _____ |
| 3. encourage  | _____ | 4. weigh     | _____ |
| 5. differ     | _____ | 6. gladden   | _____ |
| 7. ease       | _____ | 8. favour    | _____ |
| 9. strengthen | _____ | 10. free     | _____ |
| 11. weaken    | _____ | 12. continue | _____ |
| 13. widen     | _____ | 14. divide   | _____ |
| 15. help      | _____ | 16. beautify | _____ |
| 17. introduce | _____ | 18. bleed    | _____ |
| 19. refresh   | _____ | 20. forget   | _____ |

## EXERCISE 81

*Form adverbs from the following adjectives:*

- |               |       |              |       |
|---------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| 1. good       | _____ | 2. useful    | _____ |
| 3. true       | _____ | 4. noisy     | _____ |
| 5. yearly     | _____ | 6. fast      | _____ |
| 7. hungry     | _____ | 8. enjoyable | _____ |
| 9. full       | _____ | 10. bloody   | _____ |
| 11. colourful | _____ | 12. able     | _____ |
| 13. easy      | _____ | 14. brave    | _____ |
| 15. clear     | _____ | 16. cruel    | _____ |
| 17. foolish   | _____ | 18. cloudy   | _____ |
| 19. funny     | _____ | 20. dull     | _____ |

## EXERCISE 82

*Form verbs from the following nouns:*

- |                  |       |               |       |
|------------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| 1. danger        | _____ | 2. strength   | _____ |
| 3. care          | _____ | 4. sadness    | _____ |
| 5. width         | _____ | 6. life       | _____ |
| 7. success       | _____ | 8. joke       | _____ |
| 9. thickness     | _____ | 10. gift      | _____ |
| 11. invention    | _____ | 12. gladness  | _____ |
| 13. health       | _____ | 14. imitation | _____ |
| 15. glory        | _____ | 16. pleasure  | _____ |
| 17. introduction | _____ | 18. riches    | _____ |
| 19. division     | _____ | 20. largeness | _____ |

## EXERCISE 83

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words on the left.

1. **TIRE** She is \_\_\_\_\_ of cooking.
2. **STRONG** He has the \_\_\_\_\_ of ten men.
3. **OBEY** We like \_\_\_\_\_ children.
4. **RAIN** We shall not go out if it is a \_\_\_\_\_ day.
5. **ANGER** His father speaks in \_\_\_\_\_.
6. **BEAUTY** The girl is dressed \_\_\_\_\_.
7. **DIFFER** We are in \_\_\_\_\_ classes.
8. **ATTEND** You ought to pay more \_\_\_\_\_ to your studies.
9. **SEE** The farm is already in \_\_\_\_\_.
10. **BAD** The lion is \_\_\_\_\_ hurt by the hunter.
11. **CARE** You must take \_\_\_\_\_ of him.
12. **FOOLISH** My brother asked a question \_\_\_\_\_.
13. **SAFE** Mary \_\_\_\_\_ the child last week.
14. **DIFFICULT** We do the sum without any \_\_\_\_\_.
15. **DANGER** It is \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the road without looking.

# SYNONYMS AND ANTONYMS

## ( Similars and Opposites )

### (近義字和反義字)

#### A SYNONYMS ( similars ) ( 近義字 )

Word	Synonym	Word	Synonym
able ( 能夠 )	capable	caution ( 小心 )	care
abundant ( 很多的 )	plentiful	circular ( 圓的 )	round
accept ( 接受 )	receive	coarse ( 粗的 )	rough
add ( 加 )	plus	clever ( 聰明的 )	bright
afraid ( 害怕 )	frightened/scared	choose ( 選擇 )	select
alive ( 活的 )	living	close ( 近的，關閉 )	near/shut
allow ( 準許 )	let	cause ( 原因 )	reason
almost ( 幾乎 )	nearly	command ( 命令 )	order
answer ( 答 )	reply	complete ( 完成 )	finish
always ( 時常地 )	often	common ( 相同 )	same
ask ( 問 )	question	comprehend ( 明白 )	understand
back ( 後面的 )	hind	conceal ( 躲藏 )	hide
bad ( 壞的 )	evil	continue ( 繼續 )	last / go on
beautiful ( 美麗的 )	pretty	common ( 普通的 )	general
behaviour ( 行為 )	conduct	conversation ( 對話 )	talk/dialogue
beneath ( 在下面 )	under (neath)	correct ( 對的 )	right
begin ( 開始 )	start/ commence	courage ( 勇敢 )	bravery
believe ( 相信 )	trust	cowardly ( 懦弱的 )	timid
big ( 大的 )	large/ immense	custom ( 習慣 )	habit
blank ( 空白的 )	empty	create ( 創造 )	make/ invent
bottom ( 底 )	base	dangerous ( 危險的 )	risky
brave ( 勇敢的 )	bold	dark ( 黑暗的 )	dim
bright ( 光明的 )	shiny	enemy ( 敵人 )	foe
broad ( 寬的 )	wide	entire ( 完全的 )	whole
buy ( 買 )	purchase	enough ( 足夠 )	sufficient
careful ( 小心的 )	cautious	error ( 錯誤 )	mistake
catch ( 捉 )	arrest/capture	end ( 停止 )	stop

<u>Word</u>	<u>Synonym</u>	<u>Word</u>	<u>Synonym</u>
middle ( 中間 )	centre	shut ( 關 )	close
modern ( 新的 )	new	small ( 小的 )	little / tiny
moisture ( 潮濕 )	dampness	speak ( 說話 )	talk
neat ( 整齊的 )	tidy	spend ( 使用 )	use
outside ( 外面 )	exterior	surrender ( 投降 )	yield
port ( 港口 )	harbour	surprise ( 令人驚奇 )	astonish
pretend ( 假扮 )	disguise / act	stay ( 停留 )	remain
protect ( 保護 )	guard	simple ( 簡單 )	plain
purchase ( 購買 )	buy	stop ( 停止 )	cease
quiet ( 寧靜 )	silent	tidy ( 整齊的 )	neat
quick ( 快的 )	fast	tale ( 故事 )	story
real ( 真實的 )	true	true ( 真實的 )	genuine
request ( 請求 )	ask	try ( 嘗試 )	attempt
round ( 圓的 )	circular	understand ( 明白 )	know
rude ( 粗魯的 )	impolite	vacant ( 空缺 )	empty
rule ( 統治 )	govern	value ( 價值 )	worth
sad ( 憂愁的 )	unhappy	victory ( 勝利 )	success / triumph
save ( 救助 )	rescue	want ( 想要 )	need / require
seal ( 封閉 )	close	wealth ( 財富 )	richness
send ( 送出 )	deliver	withdraw ( 撤退 )	retreat
show ( 指示 )	indicate	yearly ( 每年的 )	annually

## ■ ANTONYMS ( opposites ) ( 反義字 )

<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>	<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>
able ( 能夠 )	unable ( 不能夠 )	ask ( 問 )	answer ( 答 )
above ( 高於 )	below ( 低於 )	back ( 後 )	front ( 前 )
attack ( 進攻 )	retreat ( 撤退 )	backward ( 退後 )	forward ( 向前 )
accept ( 接受 )	refuse ( 拒絕 )	bad ( 壞的 )	good ( 好的 )
add ( 加 )	subtract ( 減 )	beautiful ( 美麗的 )	ugly ( 魁梧的 )
agree ( 贊成 )	disagree ( 反對 )	begin ( 開始 )	end / finish ( 完結 )
always ( 總是 )	never ( 永不 )	clean ( 乾淨的 )	dirty ( 肆穢的 )
alive ( 活的 )	dead ( 已死的 )	clever ( 聰明的 )	stupid ( 愚笨的 )
asleep ( 睡着 )	awake ( 醒來 )	cold ( 冷的 )	hot ( 热的 )
ancient ( 古代 )	modern ( 現代 )	cool ( 涼的 )	warm ( 暖的 )
angry ( 憤怒的 )	pleased ( 喜悅的 )	cruel ( 殘忍的 )	kind ( 仁慈的 )
appear ( 出現 )	disappear ( 消失 )	correct ( 對的 )	wrong / incorrect ( 錯的 )
arrive ( 到達 )	leave / depart ( 離開 )	curse ( 咒罵 )	praise ( 稱讚 )

<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>	<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>
heavy ( 重的 )	light ( 輕的 )	permanent ( 永久的 )	temporary ( 暫時的 )
healthy ( 健康的 )	unhealthy ( 不健康 )	perfect ( 完美的 )	imperfect ( 不完美的 )
hero ( 英雄 )	coward ( 儒夫 )	plural ( 雙數 )	singular ( 單數 )
high ( 高的 )	low ( 低的 )	polite ( 有禮的 )	impolite/ rude ( 無禮的 )
leave ( 離開 )	reach ( 到達 )	poor ( 貧窮的 )	rich ( 富有的 )
lean ( 瘦的 )	fat ( 肥的 )	private ( 私人的 )	public ( 公共的 )
left ( 左方 )	right ( 右方 )	pull ( 拉 )	push ( 推 )
long ( 長的 )	short ( 短的 )	quick ( 快的 )	slow ( 慢的 )
love ( 喜愛 )	hate/hatred ( 憎恨 )	quiet ( 靜的 )	noisy ( 嘈的 )
masculine ( 男性的 )	feminine ( 女性的 )	question ( 問題 )	answer ( 答案 )
master ( 主人 )	servant ( 僕人 )	rapid ( 快的 )	slow ( 慢的 )
partly ( 部份地 )	wholly ( 全部地 )	rough ( 粗糙的 )	smooth ( 平滑的 )
past ( 過去 )	present ( 現在 )	seldom ( 不常 )	often ( 經常 )
patient ( 有耐性的 )	impatient ( 急躁的 )	selfish ( 自私的 )	generous ( 慷慨的 )
peace ( 和平 )	war ( 戰爭 )	valid ( 有效的 )	invalid ( 無效的 )

**C** Some antonyms (opposites) can be formed by adding prefixes such as “dis-”, “il-”, “im-”, “in-”, “ir-”, and “non-” .

<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>	<u>Word</u>	<u>Antonym</u>
agree ( 同意 )	<u>dis</u> agree	logical ( 合邏輯的 )	<u>il</u> logical
comfort ( 舒服 )	<u>dis</u> comfort	mature ( 成熟 )	<u>im</u> mature
continue ( 繼續 )	<u>dis</u> continue	mobile ( 可移動的 )	<u>im</u> mobile
considerate ( 體諒的 )	<u>in</u> considerate	moral ( 道德的 )	<u>im</u> moral
correct ( 改正 )	<u>in</u> correct	possible ( 可能的 )	<u>im</u> possible
dependent ( 依賴的 )	<u>in</u> dependent	proper ( 正當的 )	<u>im</u> proper
effective ( 有效的 )	<u>in</u> effective	regard ( 尊重 )	<u>dis</u> regard
essential ( 重要的 )	<u>non</u> -essential	regular ( 整齊的 )	<u>ir</u> regular
existent ( 存在的 )	<u>non</u> -existent	relevant ( 有關的 )	<u>ir</u> relevant
human ( 有人性的 )	<u>in</u> human	responsible ( 負責的 )	<u>ir</u> responsible
honest ( 誠實的 )	<u>dis</u> honest	reverent ( 虔敬的 )	<u>ir</u> reverent
legal ( 合法的 )	<u>il</u> legal	sense ( 認知 )	<u>non</u> -sense
legible ( 易讀的 )	<u>il</u> legible	stop ( 停留 )	<u>non</u> -stop
literate ( 有學識的 )	<u>il</u> literate	union ( 聯合 )	<u>non</u> -union

## EXERCISE 84

Underline the word which is the opposite of the word printed in capital letter.

1. **FORGET** ( answer, give, take, remember, ask )
2. **BRIGHT** ( right, light, black, dark, tight )
3. **RICH** ( wealthy, good, half, poor, young )
4. **FRIEND** ( enemy, relative, giant, fail, polite )
5. **BOTTOM** ( dawn, top, above, private, loose )
6. **STUPID** ( foolish, sunny, special, big, clever )
7. **DEEP** ( shallow, top, dull, soft, empty )
8. **WEAK** ( week, strong, play, hate, dead )
9. **ATTACK** ( refuse, move, defend, raise, arrive )
10. **FAMOUS** ( stale, known, soft, unknown, dirty )

## EXERCISE 85

Give the opposites of the underlined words in the following sentences.

e.g. An old woman

young

- |                              |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. A <u>feeble</u> boy       | 1. _____  |
| 2. A <u>stern</u> girl       | 2. _____  |
| 3. A <u>tasteful</u> dish    | 3. _____  |
| 4. A <u>true</u> story       | 4. _____  |
| 5. A <u>sweet</u> apple      | 5. _____  |
| 6. A <u>short</u> man        | 6. _____  |
| 7. A <u>heavy</u> load       | 7. _____  |
| 8. A <u>lazy</u> man         | 8. _____  |
| 9. A <u>difficult</u> answer | 9. _____  |
| 10. A <u>beautiful</u> woman | 10. _____ |

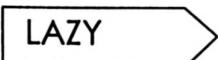
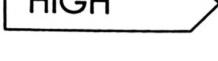
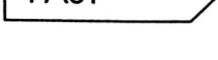
## EXERCISE 86

From list P choose a word which has the opposite meaning to the given word in list Q. Write the number of the correct word in the space. The first one is done for you.

<u>P</u>	<u>Q</u>		<u>ANSWER</u>
1. inferior	A. same	→	6
2. sale	B. cruel	→	
3. heavy	C. dishonest	→	
4. rainy	D. superior	→	
5. sharp	E. sunny	→	
6. different	F. last	→	
7. kind	G. worse	→	
8. first	H. death	→	
9. honest	I. blunt	→	
10. better	J. absent	→	
11. divorce	K. failure	→	
12. present	L. light	→	
13. life	M. empty	→	
14. full	N. marry	→	
15. success	O. purchase	→	

## EXERCISE 87

Choose the word which has the same meaning to the given word.  
Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. **LAZY**   A. happy  B. idle  
 C. good  D. diligent
2. **PRETTY**   A. beautiful  B. funny  
 C. good  D. clean
3. **TRUE**   A. honest  B. clear  
 C. bad  D. real
4. **ILL**   A. patient  B. well  
 C. sick  D. ancient
5. **BRAVE**   A. coward  B. one  
 C. weak  D. courageous
6. **WISE**   A. wide  B. large  
 C. angry  D. clever
7. **FORGIVE**   A. sorry  B. happy  
 C. able  D. pardon
8. **HIGH**   A. rough  B. weak  
 C. low  D. tall
9. **FAST**   A. quietly  B. new  
 C. glad  D. quickly
10. **BROAD**   A. empty  B. wide  
 C. narrow  D. pretty

## EXERCISE 88

Match the words from list B which have the same meaning as the words in list A. The first one is done for you.

- | <u>List A</u> |   | <u>List B</u> |
|---------------|---|---------------|
| 1. begin      | • | • A. cruel    |
| 2. unkind     | • | • B. glad     |
| 3. happy      | • | • C. start    |
| 4. team       | • | • D. crew     |
| 5. quiet      | • | • E. silent   |
| 6. believe    | • | • F. annually |
| 7. yearly     | • | • G. gap      |
| 8. hole       | • | • H. custom   |
| 9. habit      | • | • I. careful  |
| 10. cautious  | • | • J. trust    |

## EXERCISE 89

From list P choose a word which has the same meaning as a word in list Q. Write the number of the correct word in the brackets. The first one is done for you.

<u>P</u>	<u>Q</u>	
1. new	A. close	A. ( 2 )
2. shut	B. bold	B. ( )
3. begin	C. right	C. ( )
4. almost	D. modern	D. ( )
5. brave	E. depart	E. ( )
6. correct	F. commence	F. ( )
7. leave	G. powerful	G. ( )
8. strong	H. tale	H. ( )
9. guard	I. nearly	I. ( )
10. story	J. protect	J. ( )

# PUNCTUATION ( 標點 )

Here are the kinds of Punctuation:-

## Capital Letter (A, B, C ...) ( 大寫字母 )

They are used:

1. At the beginning of every sentence. 在每句子的開始。  
e.g. a. He is a boy. b. We are Chinese.
2. At the beginning of a quotation. 在引號內的開始。  
e.g. Her mother said to him, "You must work hard, my child."
3. For Proper Nouns. 在專有名詞中。  
e.g. I gave John a book.
4. For the Pronoun "I". 代名詞的 "I"。  
e.g. If he is there, I shall see him.
5. For days, months and special festivals.  
在星期、月份和特別節日的名稱中。  
e.g. a. Sunday, Wednesday; b. January, December;  
c. Christmas, Mid-Autumn Festival.
6. For the important words in a title. 在稱號或頭銜的重要字中。  
e.g. "The King of the Golden River."

## Full Stop ( . ) ( 句號 )

It is used:

1. At the end of a sentence to show that it is finished.  
表示一句子已完結。  
e.g. The children go to school everyday.
2. After the abbreviation of nouns and initials.  
在簡寫字和姓名起首字母之後。  
e.g. a. The U.S.A. ( the United States of America )  
b. the V.T.C. ( the Vocational Training Council )  
c. Mr. C. Y. Chan  
d. p.m.  
e. Mrs.

## C Comma ( , ) ( 逗號 )

It is used:-

1. To divide words or phrases of equal rank.

將同類的字或片語分開。

- e.g. a. Hong Kong Island, Kowloon and the New Territories are the three main regions of Hong Kong.  
b. Mr. Chan, former teacher of our school, is a headmaster now.

2. To divide a piece of Direct Speech. 分隔一組「直接引語」。

e.g. a. "Tom," said the teacher, "is wrong."

b. John said to me, "Do you come here by bus?"

3. To address a person. 稱呼一個人

e.g. Paul, come here!

4. Between two clauses. 在兩個子句的中間。

e.g. As soon as I find out the truth, I'll tell you.

## D Question Mark ( ? ) ( 問號 )

It is used only in asking questions. 只用在發問句子中。

e.g. How old are you?

## E Colon ( : ) ( 冒號 )

It is used to introduce an example, explanation or a list:-

用來介紹一個例子，解釋或名單。

e.g. The eight parts of speech are: noun, verb, adjective, adverb, pronoun, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

## F Semi-colon ( ; ) ( 分號 )

It is used to join up two sentences, especially when there is a contrast. It is also used to replace "but".

用來隔離兩個有對比意義的短句。分號亦可用作代替'but'的用途。

e.g. Most of the boys are honest; a few aren't.

Most of the boys are honest but a few aren't.

## G Exclamation Mark ( ! ) ( 感歎號 )

It is used after interjections or after phrases and sentences expressing a sudden feeling or wish.

用在感歎片語之後或句子中用來表示突然的感覺或希望。

e.g. Oh! You crazy fellow!

Get out!

## Apostrophe ( ' ) and Apostrophe s ( 's ) (省略號/主有號)

**It is used:-**

1. To show the omission of letter(s) or number(s).

表示省去了的字母或數字。

- e.g. a. Don't; b. I'm c. He'll  
d. can't e. won't f. '09 (2009)

2. To show the possessive and for the plural of letters.

表示所有符號或構成字母的複數式。



## Quotation Marks ( " " ) ( 引號 )

These marks are used before and after words quoted.

用在引述字句的前面和後面，表示要引述的字。

- e.g. a. "Tom," said the teacher, "is lazy."  
b. Have you seen the book "Alice in Wonderland"?

### Dash ( - ) ( 破折號 )

It is used :-

1. To indicate what is not expected. 用在表示意料之外的事情

- e.g. He held his breath as he opened the treasure chest and found instead of gold coins – a button.

2. To divide words from a sentence for a sudden change of thought 用在突然改變想法的句子中。

- e.g. If I were a rich man – but why think of such things?

### Hyphen ( - ) ( 連字號 )

It is used :-

1. To join two words together. 將兩個字連在一起。

- ## 2. To divide a word into syllabus. 將字的音節劃分。

- e.g. a. Our grand-father is kind to us.

- b. Joe is studying in a grammar-school in Sydney.

## EXERCISE 90

Choose the best punctuations to complete the following sentences.

1. The traveller exclaimed  "What a lovely view  "  
 A. ? !  
 B. , !  
 C. . —  
 D. ! .
2. "Where is the post office  " asked the foreigner   
 A. . ?  
 B. ? .  
 C. ? !  
 D. . !
3. My mother  has gone to Japan.  
 A. , a teacher,  
 B. a teacher,  
 C. : a teacher  
 D. , a teacher
4. "Can you see the girl over there   as beautiful as a fairy," said Justin.  
 A. ? She's  
 B. ? She  
 C. ; She's  
 D. ? She's
5. "Oh  " cried my father  "I have cut my chin."  
 A. ? !  
 B. . !  
 C. ! .  
 D. ! .

6. Mr. Chan  wants to make a journey to the moon.
- A. a rich man,  
 B. a rich man  
 C. , a rich man  
 D. , a rich man,
7. That blue dress is mine.  is red
- A. Hers .  
 B. hers .  
 C. Her's -  
 D. Hers ?
8. London  is big and famous.
- A. . the capital of England,  
 B. the capital of England  
 C. , the capital of England,  
 D. the capital of England.
9. What a lovely doll   eyes are like stars.
- A. ! it's  
 B. ! Its  
 C. ? Its  
 D. ! It's
10. Then his son took some bread  some water and an apple  and went to school.
- A. . ,  
 B. , ,  
 C. . -  
 D. ? -

## EXERCISE 91

*Fill in the missing punctuation.*

1. ( ) Will you buy a box of chocolate for me ( ) ( )  
Tom asked his mother.
2. ( ) Is the girl beautiful or ugly ( ) ( ) asked Dave.  
"She ( ) s beautiful," said Judy.
3. "I don't know ( )" replied the student ( ) "but I think they  
were born without tails ( )"
4. Miss Chan ( ) a nurse ( ) is tall and kind.
5. "Very well ( ) thank you ( ) What brings you here ( )  
Mr. Chan ( )" she asked.
6. "Do you make a lot of money in your business ( ) Mr. Lee ( )"  
asked Joe.
7. "Don't go out ( ) It ( ) s raining outside ( )" said Mrs.  
Chan.
8. "You're a liar ( ) Don't think I'm a fool ( )" shouted Lucy.
9. They wrote good poems ( ) didn't they ( )
10. It ( ) s nice to see you again. How are you ( )
11. "Hello ( ) What can I do for you ( )" asked the salesman.
12. "Let ( ) s give it to the police ( ) ( ) Mary replied.
13. The doctor quickly went to see the boy ( ) "Are you alright  
( )" said the doctor ( )
14. "Ha! Ha ( ) I can't cut off your leg ( ) I am not a doctor ( )"  
said dad.
15. "Would you mind giving me a cup of tea ( ) I ( ) m very  
thirsty," said the technician.

## EXERCISE 92

Punctuate the following sentences:

e.g. 1. hurrah we have won the game

Hurrah! We have won the game!

2. Mary said to john go away

Mary said to John, "Go away!"

1. she sits in front of the mirror

---

2. miss wong has just told jack a funny story

---

3. I m sure it ll look very nice when I finish

---

4. how much is it

---

5. mr chan said lets go there now shall we take a bus

---

6. what kind of clothes do you want cotton or silk

---

7. I am going to see uncle george next week

---

8. thank you I m glad I can go

---

9. I told mr brown to go home quickly

---

10. we go to the church at 9:00 a m every Sunday

---

11. oh look at that dress what a mix of colours it has

---

12. oh my god I have told you not to do it like that

---

13. i go to see dr ng because I m not feeling well

---

14. the man asked alice where do you live

---

15. hush dont make any noise

---

16. whom did he see yesterday

---

17. tom will you please pass me that cup

---

18. he received a letter from his friend in the u s a

---

19. there are many animals in the zoo lions tigers elephants zebras and wolves

---

---

20. mr chan mr lam mr ng and mr ho are coming to my house tonight

---

---

## EXERCISE 93

*Rewrite the following dialogue between Fred and Jack correctly.  
Put in capital letters and other necessary punctuation marks.*

fred look heres a cave lets go in

jack its very dark inside

fred never mind Ive a torch

jack you go in first Ill follow you

Fred:

---

---

---

---

## EXERCISE 94

*Rewrite the following paragraph with suitable capital letters and punctuation marks.*

Pauly has a parrot she calls him polly polly has a hard sharp beak his feathers are green and blue and red in colours they are very soft pollys wings are weak so he cannot fly but he can climb pauly thinks he is very beautiful

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## ONE WORD FOR MANY ( 單字代替釋義 )

A

Persons ( 人物 )

1. A man who acts on the stage or for a film. —— actor ( 演員 )
2. A woman who acts on the stage or for a film. ————— actress ( 女演員 )
3. Traveller through outer space. ————— astronaut ( 太空人 )
4. A person who draws and paints well. ————— artist ( 藝術家 )
5. A person who writes books. ————— author ( 著作家 )
6. One who makes bread. ————— baker ( 麵包師傅 )
7. A person who cuts hair for others. ————— barber/hairdressor ( 理髮師 )
8. A person who lives by asking for food or money. ————— beggar ( 乞丐 )
9. One who makes things with iron. ————— blacksmith ( 鐵匠 )
10. One who breaks into people's home to steal. - burglar ( 竊匪 )
11. One who sells meat for food. ————— butcher ( 屠夫 )
12. One who is in charge of a ship. ————— captain ( 船長 )
13. One who makes things with wood. ————— carpenter ( 木匠 )
14. One who draws cartoon. ————— cartoonist ( 漫畫家 )
15. One who mends shoes. ————— cobbler ( 補鞋匠 )
16. A scientist who specializes in chemistry. ————— chemist ( 化學家 )
17. One who conducts an orchestra. ————— conductor ( 指揮 )
18. One who buys things. ————— customer ( 顧客 )
19. One who rides bicycle. ————— cyclist ( 騎腳踏車者 )
20. One who takes care of the teeth. ————— dentist ( 牙醫 )
21. One who cures the sick. ————— doctor ( 醫生 )
22. One who drives a vehicle. ————— driver ( 司機 )

23. One who specializes in machines. ————— engineer (工程師 )
24. One who grows crops or raises animals. ————— farmer (農夫 )
25. One who helps to put out fire. ————— firefighter (消防員 )
26. One who earns a living by fishing. ————— fisherman (漁夫 )
27. One who sells fish. ————— fishmonger (魚販 )
28. One who serves passengers on aeroplane. — flight attendant  
(機艙服務員 )
29. One who sells flowers. ————— florist (花販 )
30. One who predicts your future. ————— fortune teller (占卜師 )
31. One who works in a garden. ————— gardener (園藝家 )
32. One who makes things with gold. ————— goldsmith (金匠 )
33. Ruler of a colony. ————— governor (總督 )
34. A woman who teaches children  
in their own home. ————— governess (女家庭教師 )
35. One who sells vegetables and fruit. ————— greengrocer  
(蔬果販 )
36. One who sells household needs. ————— grocer (雜貨商 )
37. One who shows other people places  
of interest. ————— guide (嚮導 )
38. Man who is in charge of a school. ————— headmaster (校長 )
39. Woman who is in charge of a school. ————— headmistress (女校長 )
40. Man who entertains guests. ————— host (主人 )
41. A woman who entertains guests. ————— hostess (女主人 )
42. One who goes after animals for food or  
sport. ————— hunter (獵人 )
43. A very young child. ————— infant (嬰孩 )
44. One who sells goods made of metal. ————— ironmonger (五金商 )
45. One who practices law. ————— lawyer (律師 )
46. One who is in charge of a library. ————— librarian (圖書館長 )
47. One who has a million dollars. ————— millionaire (百萬富翁 )
48. One who works in a mine underground. ————— miner (礦工 )

49. Female parent. \_\_\_\_\_ mother (母親)
50. One who looks after patients. \_\_\_\_\_ nurse (護士)
51. Child who has lost his/her parent(s). \_\_\_\_\_ orphan (孤兒)
52. One who travels by bus, train, ship, aeroplane, etc. \_\_\_\_\_ passenger (乘客)
53. Person who flies aeroplanes or guides ships. — pilot (飛機師/領航員)
54. One who writes poems. \_\_\_\_\_ poet (詩人)
55. One who carries luggage at airport, station, hotel, etc. \_\_\_\_\_ porter (搬運工人)
56. Man who collects and delivers letters. — postman (郵差)
57. Person kept in prison for crime. \_\_\_\_\_ prisoner (囚犯)
58. One who works on a ship. \_\_\_\_\_ sailor (水手)
59. One who collects garbage on the street. — scavenger (拾荒者)
60. One who takes care of sheep. \_\_\_\_\_ shepherd (牧羊人)
61. Owner of a small shop. \_\_\_\_\_ shopkeeper (店主)
62. One who makes or mends shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ shoemaker (鞋匠)
63. One who fights to protect his country. — soldier (軍人)
64. One who makes clothes and garments. — tailor (裁縫)
65. One who gives lessons at school. \_\_\_\_\_ teacher (教師)
66. One who steals things. \_\_\_\_\_ thief (賊)
67. One who is on a journey. \_\_\_\_\_ traveller (旅客)
68. One who goes to see somebody. \_\_\_\_\_ visitor (訪客)
69. Man who serves at table. \_\_\_\_\_ waiter (男侍應生)
70. Woman who serves at table. \_\_\_\_\_ waitress (女侍應生)
- Woman who has not married again  
71. after her husband's death. \_\_\_\_\_ widow (寡婦)
- Man who has not married again  
72. after his wife's death. \_\_\_\_\_ widower (鳏夫)

## Places and Things ( 地方和東西 )

1. Place where aeroplanes land and take off. —— airport ( 飛機場 )
2. Pond or tank where fishes are kept. —— aquarium ( 水族缸 )
3. Place where cakes and bread are made. —— bakery ( 餅店 )
4. Place offering services such as depositing and lending of money at interest. —— bank ( 銀行 )
5. Building where grain is stored. —— barn ( 穀倉 )
6. Flesh of an oxen or a cow used as meat. —— beef ( 牛肉 )
7. Two-wheeled machine for riding on. —— bicycle ( 兩輪腳踏車 )
8. Structure of wood, concrete, stone, or steel across a river, road, harbour, etc. —— bridge ( 橋 )
9. Place where coffee and tea are served. —— cafe ( 咖啡店 )
10. List of the days, weeks and months of a year. —— calendar ( 日曆 )
11. Animal with hump(s), used in desert for riding. —— camel ( 駱駝 )
12. Channel cut through land for transportation or irrigation. —— canal ( 運河 )
13. Building where people gather to worship God. —— church/chapel ( 教堂 )  
temple ( 廟宇 )
14. Theatre in which films are shown. —— cinema ( 戲院 )
15. The large hall built in a railway or MTR station. —— concourse ( 大堂 )
16. Building where milk is kept and butter is made. —— dairy ( 牛奶場 )
17. Place where medicines are prepared and given out. —— dispensary ( 藥房 )
18. Large area of dry and sandy land. —— desert ( 沙漠 )
19. Book from which we can find the meaning of words. —— dictionary ( 字典 )
20. Place where ships are (un)loaded or repaired. —— dock ( 船埠 )
21. Building where goods are made. —— factory ( 工廠 )

22. Land covered with trees. ————— forest / jungle  
(樹林 / 森林)
23. Building where cars are kept or repaired. ————— garage (車房)
24. Ground used for growing trees and flowers. ————— garden (花園)
25. Tool for driving in nails or breaking things. ————— hammer (錘)
26. Piece of cloth carried in the pocket  
for cleaning the face. ————— handkerchief (手帕)
27. Port or place of shelter for ships. ————— harbour (港口)
28. Place where people are treated  
for their illness. ————— hospital (醫院)
29. Building where rooms and meals  
are provided for travellers. ————— hotel (酒店)
30. Land surrounded by water. ————— island (海島)
31. Hut to shelter a dog. ————— kennel (狗屋)
32. Metal instrument for opening a lock. ————— key (鑰匙)
33. Room used for cooking. ————— kitchen (廚房)
34. Area of grass, usually tended and mown. ————— lawn (草地)
35. Room or building for a collection of  
books are kept there for reading. ————— library (圖書館)
36. Water-proof coat made of cloth treated  
with rubber. ————— mackintosh (雨衣)  
(raincoat)
37. Public place where people meet to  
buy and sell goods. ————— market (市場)
38. A flat surface in a station for passengers to wait  
for trains. ————— platform (月台)
39. Building where we can watch drama  
and dance shows. ————— theatre (劇場)
40. Building for storing goods. ————— warehouse (貨倉)

## EXERCISE 95

Complete the word on the right. The first letter is already put in.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. Person who makes things with wood.                                | 1. c _____  |
| 2. Building where books are kept for reading.                        | 2. l _____  |
| 3. Place where water is collected and stored.                        | 3. r _____  |
| 4. Flesh of pigs used as food.                                       | 4. p _____  |
| 5. First meal of the day.  | 5. b _____  |
| 6. Room where food is prepared and cooked.                           | 6. k _____  |
| 7. Book from which we can find the meaning<br>of words.              | 7. d _____  |
| 8. Long-necked animal with hump(s) used in<br>the desert for riding. | 8. c _____  |
| 9. Small flying insect which bites people and<br>sucks their blood.  | 9. m _____  |
| 10. Structure of wood or stone across a river.                       | 10. b _____ |

## EXERCISE 96

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. Person who makes clothes. | <input type="radio"/> A. sailor<br><input type="radio"/> B. tailor<br><input type="radio"/> C. visitor<br><input type="radio"/> D. governor |
| 2. Hut to shelter a dog.     | <input type="radio"/> A. kettle<br><input type="radio"/> B. kernel<br><input type="radio"/> C. kennel<br><input type="radio"/> D. canal     |

3. Woman who has not married again after her husband's death.
- A. widow  
 B. window  
 C. widower  
 D. wife
4. Surface in which we can see ourselves.
- A. mirror  
 B. mutton  
 C. museum  
 D. matron
5. Place where ships are un.loaded and repaired.
- A. garage  
 B. hospital  
 C. theatre  
 D. dock
6. Man who grows crops.
- A. fireman  
 B. hunter  
 C. farmer  
 D. florist
7. Tool for cutting, usually has a thin blade with a series of sharp teeth.
- A. knife  
 B. scissors  
 C. saw  
 D. tongs
8. Land surrounded by water.
- A. lake  
 B. island  
 C. pool  
 D. well
9. Instrument for measuring temperature.
- A. towel  
 B. telephone  
 C. thermometer  
 D. telescope

10. A large hall in a railway station where passengers can gather and meet
- A. church
  - B. platform
  - C. concourse
  - D. cottage

## EXERCISE 97

*Choose the correct word from the box below to complete the sentences.*

nest	captain	compass	florist	dentist
rickshaw	author	palace	lavatory	sail

1. We buy flowers from a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place where birds live.
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who looks after our teeth.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a two-wheeled carriage pulled by a man.
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who is in charge of a ship.
6. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place where a king or queen lives.
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an instrument used to show directions.
8. An \_\_\_\_\_ is a man who writes books.
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a sheet of cloth spread to catch the wind and move a boat.
10. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a room for washing hands and face.

# ONE WORD FOR A PHRASE

## ( 單字代替片語 )

1. a few \_\_\_\_\_ ( 幾個 ) several
2. a great deal of \_\_\_\_\_ ( 很多 ) plenty of
3. arms or legs \_\_\_\_\_ ( 手足 ) limb
4. as well \_\_\_\_\_ ( 除...外，還 ) too
5. at last \_\_\_\_\_ ( 最後 ) finally
6. at once \_\_\_\_\_ ( 立刻 ) immediately
7. by the side of \_\_\_\_\_ ( 在旁邊 ) near
8. call (something) in \_\_\_\_\_ ( 回收 ) collect
9. call off \_\_\_\_\_ ( 取消 ) cancel
10. call on (somebody) \_\_\_\_\_ ( 拜訪 ) visit
11. cannot be seen \_\_\_\_\_ ( 看不見的 ) invisible
12. cannot hear \_\_\_\_\_ ( 聾的 ) deaf
13. cannot see \_\_\_\_\_ ( 盲的 ) blind
14. cannot speak \_\_\_\_\_ ( 哑的 ) dumb
15. come about \_\_\_\_\_ ( 發生 ) happen
16. come across \_\_\_\_\_ ( 偶然遇見 ) meet
17. come back \_\_\_\_\_ ( 回來 ) return
18. come to see \_\_\_\_\_ ( 探訪 ) visit
19. come to \_\_\_\_\_ ( 達到 ) reach
20. (be) dressed in \_\_\_\_\_ ( 穿着 ) (be) wearing
21. everyday \_\_\_\_\_ ( 每日 ) daily
22. every month \_\_\_\_\_ ( 每個月 ) monthly
23. every week \_\_\_\_\_ ( 每星期 ) weekly
24. find out \_\_\_\_\_ ( 發現 ) discover
25. (go) from time to time \_\_\_\_\_ ( 時常 ) occasionally
26. give knowledge to \_\_\_\_\_ ( 通知 ) inform
27. go away \_\_\_\_\_ ( 離開 ) leave

28. go by \_\_\_\_\_ ( 經過 ) pass  
29. go into \_\_\_\_\_ ( 進入 ) enter  
30. go on \_\_\_\_\_ ( 繼續 ) continue  
31. go down below the surface of water- ( 下沉 ) sink  
32. goods brought in \_\_\_\_\_ ( 進口貨 ) imports  
33. goods sent to \_\_\_\_\_ ( 出口貨 ) exports  
34. having nothing inside \_\_\_\_\_ ( 空的 ) empty  
35. in a short time \_\_\_\_\_ ( 不久 ) soon  
36. in front of \_\_\_\_\_ ( 在...前面 ) first  
37. lame person \_\_\_\_\_ ( 跛子 ) cripple  
38. learn by heart \_\_\_\_\_ ( 熟記 ) memorize  
39. look for \_\_\_\_\_ ( 找尋 ) search  
40. make up one's mind \_\_\_\_\_ ( 決定 ) decide  
41. not fresh \_\_\_\_\_ ( 不新鮮 ) stale  
42. on time \_\_\_\_\_ ( 準時地 ) punctually  
43. (go) out of sight \_\_\_\_\_ ( 消失 ) disappear  
44. out of work \_\_\_\_\_ ( 失業 ) unemployed  
45. passage to go into \_\_\_\_\_ ( 入口 ) entrance  
46. passage to go out \_\_\_\_\_ ( 出口 ) exit  
47. period of 10 years \_\_\_\_\_ ( 十年 ) decade  
48. period of 100 years \_\_\_\_\_ ( 百年 ) century  
49. period of 2 weeks \_\_\_\_\_ ( 2星期 ) fortnight  
50. person who is mad \_\_\_\_\_ ( 瘋人 ) lunatic  
51. protect from danger \_\_\_\_\_ ( 保衛 ) guard  
52. put on clothes \_\_\_\_\_ ( 穿衣 ) dress  
53. say or do again \_\_\_\_\_ ( 重複 ) repeat  
54. talking point \_\_\_\_\_ ( 講題 ) topic  
55. two times \_\_\_\_\_ ( 兩次 ) twice  
56. unable to walk properly \_\_\_\_\_ ( 跛的 ) lame

## EXERCISE 98

Give one word for the underlined phrases.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1. She was <u>dressed in</u> red last night.                           | 1. _____  |
| 2. He has not <u>made up his mind</u> yet.                             | 2. _____  |
| 3. The <u>talking point</u> of this lesson is music.                   | 3. _____  |
| 4. His house is <u>by the side of</u> the river.                       | 4. _____  |
| 5. The food is <u>not fresh</u> .                                      | 5. _____  |
| 6. The boy <u>went up</u> the hill.                                    | 6. _____  |
| 7. They will come <u>the day after today</u> .                         | 7. _____  |
| 8. He came to my house <u>two times</u> .                              | 8. _____  |
| 9. Come here and I'll find the <u>way to go out</u> .                  | 9. _____  |
| 10. You can keep the library books for a<br><u>period of 2 weeks</u> . | 10. _____ |

## EXERCISE 99

Circle the word which can best replace the underlined words in the following sentences:

1. He will do it in a short time. ( slowly, at once, soon )
2. I gave him a great deal of money. ( many, much, plenty of )
3. My uncle came to see us last week. ( visited, went, passed )
4. The moon went out of sight behind the dark cloud.  
( appeared, visited, disappeared )
5. This magazine is published every week. ( daily, weekly, monthly )
6. The boys answered the teacher at once.  
( quickly, immediately, altogether )

7. Since it was raining we called off the football match.  
( continued, cancelled, crossed )
8. He will come back soon. ( return, enter, pass )
9. The contaminated milk was recollected by the manufacturer.  
( called in, called on, called off )
10. A wild beast came out of the forest all at once.  
( immediately, suddenly, quickly )

## EXERCISE 100

- A. *Write down the word which should come between each of the following pairs of word:*

*Example: good better best*

- |            |       |         |
|------------|-------|---------|
| 1. many    | _____ | most    |
| 2. bad     | _____ | worst   |
| 3. past    | _____ | future  |
| 4. Winter  | _____ | Summer  |
| 5. morning | _____ | evening |

- B. *Underline the word which is different from the others.*

*Example: boy, man, father, girl, uncle*

1. blue, red, grey, pen, yellow
2. apple, orange, mango, cabbage, banana
3. train, tram, plane, car, carpark
4. shorts, cotton, shirt, coat, dress
5. jump, run, hop, walk, sleep

## EXERCISE 101

- A. *Underline the word which can fit the meaning of the word in bold letters.*

Example: ANIMAL  
floor/ tree/ elephant/ pillow/ paper/ wood

1. THE LARGEST ONE

sampan/ cart/ junk/ ferry/ liner/ car

2. MADE BY BEE

milk/ cake/ tea/ honey/ bread/ sugar

3. VEGETABLE

cake/ coffee/ orange/ carrot/ pig/ grass

4. THE MOST FIERCE ONE

goat/ tiger/ rabbit/ horse/ sheep/ cow

5. WHERE A KING LIVES

hut/ temple/ palace/ smithy/ studio/ reservoir

- B. *Underline the two words which belong together.*

Example: ship/ pink/ sky/ green/ town/ house

1. cook/ nose/ cloth/ coin/ chin/ name

2. star/ spider/ money/ kilometer/ year/ centimeter

3. beetle/ eagle/ crocodile/ gold/ pineapple/ cockroach

4. talk/ sink/ spend/ send/ think/ speak

5. mile/ spoon/ table/ street/ chair/ roof

## EXERCISE 102

A. Complete the word on the right. The first and the last letters are already put in.

Example: Man who flies an aeroplane.

P I L O T

- |   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| 1. Person who comes to see you.           | ( 1 ) V _____ R  |
| 2. Person who belongs to your family.     | ( 2 ) R _____ E  |
| 3. Group of people who watch a show.      | ( 3 ) A _____ E  |
| 4. Man who is in the army.                | ( 4 ) S _____ R  |
| 5. Daughter of a king.                    | ( 5 ) P _____ S  |
| 6. Man who writes books.                  | ( 6 ) A _____ R  |
| 7. Person who rides a bicycle.            | ( 7 ) C _____ T  |
| 8. Person who walks on the streets.       | ( 8 ) P _____ N  |
| 9. Person who lives next door.            | ( 9 ) N _____ R  |
| 10. Instrument for measuring temperature. | ( 10 ) T _____ R |

B. Fill in the blanks. The first letter of the word is given.

1. Susan always helps the b \_\_\_\_\_ people cross the road.
2. The king and his c \_\_\_\_\_ soldiers fled in disorder.
3. Jacky got a kick and became l \_\_\_\_\_ after the football match.
4. The parents felt sad because they had a d \_\_\_\_\_ baby.
5. The old man was getting d \_\_\_\_\_, he could hardly hear.
6. A person who is mad is called a l \_\_\_\_\_.

## VOCABULARY (字彙)

A Similes (明喻)

1. As black as coal —— very black. (漆黑的)
2. As blind as a bat —— unable to see well. (盲目的)
3. As brave as a lion —— having no fear. (勇猛的)
4. As busy as an ant —— being hard working. (忙碌的)
5. As clear as crystal —— easy to see the truth. (明顯的)
6. As cold as ice —— reserve formality. (冷漠的)
7. As cool as a cucumber —— being calm. (冷靜的)
8. As cunning as a fox —— clever at deceiving. (狡猾的)
9. As dry as a bone —— not wet. (乾燥的)
10. As fast as a deer —— quick. (快速的)
11. As fresh as a daisy —— always alert and ready to go. (精力充沛)
12. As grave as a judge —— serious. (嚴肅的)
13. As gentle as a lamb —— kind. (馴服的)
14. As good as gold —— very well behaved. (非常好的)
15. As green as grass —— flourishing. (青綠的)
16. As happy as a king —— feeling satisfaction. (快樂的)
17. As heavy as lead —— hard to carry. (沉重的)
18. As hungry as a bear —— very hungry. (饑餓的)
19. As large as a whale —— huge in size. (巨大的)
20. As light as a feather —— not having much weight. (輕飄飄的)
21. As loud as thunder —— loud noise follows the lightening. (響亮的)
22. As pale as death —— bloodless face. (面無血色)
23. As playful as a kitten —— in a mood of play. (頑皮的)
24. As quick as lightning —— moving fast. (快速的)
25. As silent as the grave —— making no sound. (靜寂的)
26. As sharp as a needle —— very clever. (非常敏銳)
27. As slow as a snail —— taking a long time. (緩慢的)
28. As smooth as velvet —— free from roughness. (光滑的)
29. As soft as silk —— smooth and delicate. (柔軟的)
30. As sour as vinegar —— having a sharp taste. (酸的)
31. As strong as an ox —— very strong. (強壯的)

32. As sweet as honey ——tasting like sugar. (甜蜜的)  
 33. As tall as a giant ——man of great height. (高大的)  
 34. As timid as a rabbit ——shy and afraid. (膽小的)  
 35. As tough as leather ——not easily cut. (堅韌的)  
 36. As white as a sheet ——pale in colour. (蒼白的)  
 37. As wise as Solomon ——clever and knowledgeable. (明智的)

## Compound Words (複合詞)

1. **ache** (痛)  
 headache (頭痛)    stomachache (胃痛)    toothache (牙痛)
2. **air** (空氣)  
 airmail (空郵)    airplane (飛機)    airbag (氣袋)  
 air conditioning (空氣調節)    air-sick (飛機不適病症)
3. **ball** (球)  
 basketball (籃球)    football (足球)    volleyball (排球)
4. **bed** (床)  
 bed-time (睡覺時間)    bedroom (睡房)    bed spread (床罩)
5. **birth** (誕生)  
 birthday (生日)    birth place (出生地)    birthmark (胎記)
6. **board** (木板)  
 blackboard (黑板)    notice board (佈告板)    surfboard (衝浪板)
7. **boy** (男童)  
 boy scout (童子軍)    boyfriend (男朋友)
8. **check** (檢查)  
 check-in (登記)    check-out (退房)    check-up (檢查)  
 check-list (核對清單)
9. **clock** (鐘)  
 clock tower (鐘樓)    electric clock (電鐘)    alarm clock (鬧鐘)  
 clockwise (順時鐘旋轉)
10. **fare** (車費)  
 bus fare (巴士費)    tram fare (電車費)    taxi fare (的士費)
11. **fee** (費)  
 school fee (學費)    management fee (管理費)
12. **fire** (火)  
 fire alarm (火警鐘)    fire engine (滅火車)    firefly (螢火蟲)  
 fire fighter (消防員)    fire wood (柴)    fire extinguisher (滅火器)

13. **fore** ( 前的 )

forearm ( 前臂 )

forehead ( 頸 )

forecast ( 預測 )

14. **hall** ( 堂 )

City Hall ( 大會堂 )

school hall ( 學校禮堂 )

15. **head** ( 頭 )

headmaster ( 校長 )

headmistress ( 女校長 )

headache ( 頭痛 )

headquarters ( 總局 )

headline ( 標題 )

16. **ice** ( 冰 )

ice cream ( 冰淇淋 )

ice cube ( 冰粒 )

iceberg ( 冰山 )

17. **juice** ( 汁 )

fruit juice ( 果汁 )

apple juice ( 蘋果汁 )

orange juice ( 橙汁 )

18. **match** ( 比賽 )

match box ( 火柴盒 )

matchmaker ( 媒人 )

football match ( 足球比賽 )

19. **motor** ( 發動機 )

motorboat ( 氣船 )

motorcar ( 汽車 )

motorcycle ( 電單車 )

motor way ( 快速公路 )

20. **note** ( 便條, 筆記 )

notebook ( 筆記簿 )

banknote ( 紙幣 )

21. **nut** ( 堅果 )

peanut ( 花生 )

coconut ( 椰子 )

chestnut ( 栗子 )

22. **paper** ( 紙 )

paperbacks ( 平裝書 )

paper weight ( 紙壓 )

mock paper ( 模擬試卷 )

newspaper ( 報紙 )

question paper ( 試卷 )

23. **park** ( 公園／停車場 )

car park ( 停車場 )

national park ( 國家公園 )

24. **pen** ( 筆 )

pen friend ( 筆友 )

fountain pen ( 墨水筆 )

ball pen ( 原子筆 )

25. **police** ( 警察 )

police car ( 警車 )

police officer ( 警員 )

police station ( 警察局 )

26. **post** ( 郵政 )

postcard ( 明信片 )

post office ( 郵局 )

postman ( 郵差 )

27. **rain** (雨)  
raincoat (雨衣)      rain boots (雨靴)      rainfall (雨量)
28. **room** (房間)  
roommate (室友)      bathroom (浴室)      bedroom (寢室)  
dining room (飯廳)      sitting room (客廳)
29. **sea** (海)  
seaside (海邊)      seashore (海岸)      seagull (海鷗)  
seaman (海員)      sea sick (暈船的)
30. **sick** (患病的)  
sick leave (在病假中)      sick room (病房)      sick list (病人名單)
31. **signal** (信號)  
signal gun (信號槍)      typhoon signal (颱風信號)
32. **stop** (站)  
stopwatch (計秒錶)      bus stop (巴士站)      tram stop (電車站)
33. **sun** (太陽)  
sunrise (日出)      sunset (日落)      sunshine (陽光)  
sun flower (向日葵)      sun burn (曬傷)      sunglasses (太陽鏡)
34. **ticket** (票)  
ferry ticket (船票)      tram ticket (電車票)      train ticket (火車票)
35. **torch** (火把)  
torchlight (火炬光)      electric torch (電筒)
36. **traffic** (交通)  
traffic jam (交通擠塞)      traffic light (交通燈)  
traffic warden (交通督導員)
37. **watch** (錶)  
watchman (看更人)      watchdog (守門狗)      wristwatch (手錶)
38. **way** (路)  
railway (鐵路)      railway station (火車站)      tramway (電車路)
39. **year** (年)  
year book (年鑑)      year long (連續一年的)      leap year (閏年)
40. **zebra** (斑馬)  
zebra crossing (斑馬線)

## EXERCISE 103

Choose one word from the left and put it after the word given on the right.

Example:	park	Car	<u>park</u>
	crossing	1. Boy	_____
	concourse	2. Swimming	_____
	scout	3. Bus	_____
	pool	4. Leap	_____
	fare	5. Sick	_____
	signal	6. Post	_____
	leave	7. Zebra	_____
	torch	8. MTR	_____
	guide	9. Girl	_____
	office	10. Typhoon	_____
	juice		
	mail		
	year		



### Common Abbreviations (常用縮寫字)

am not	*ain't	You have	You've	may not	*mayn't
are not	aren't	He would	He'd	must not	mustn't
were not	weren't	You are	You're	ought not	*oughtn't
does not	doesn't	It is	It's	We shall	We'll
have not	haven't	There is	There's	She will	She'll
had not	hadn't	Who is	Who's	They will	They'll
will not	won't	Where has/is	Where's	We have	We've
should not	shouldn't	is not	isn't	I would	I'd
could not	couldn't	was not	wasn't	I am	I'm
might not	mightn't	do not	don't	They are	They're
need not	needn't	did not	didn't	That is	That's
I shall	I'll	has not	hasn't	What is	What's
He will	He'll	shall not	shan't	Who has/is	Who's
You will	You'll	would not	wouldn't	Let us	Let's
I have	I've	cannot	can't	*not often used (不常用)	

A.D. (公元) In The Year of Our Lord  
*Anno Domini*

a.m. (上午) Before noon  
*Ante Meridiem*

B.A. (文學士) Bachelor of Arts

B.C. (紀元前) Before Christ

B.Sc. (理學士) Bachelor of Science

C.E.O (總裁) Chief Executive Officer

Co. (公司) Company

C.O.D. (貨到收款) Cash on Delivery

c/o (由…轉交) care of

dept. (部門) department

D.I.Y. (自己安裝) Do It Yourself

D.J. (唱片騎師) Disc Jockey

Dr. (醫生) Doctor

e.g. (舉例) for example

*Exemple Gratia*

E.B. (教育局) Education Bureau

E.R. (伊利沙伯女皇) Elizabeth Regina

Esq. (先生) Esquire

etc. (諸如此類) And so forth

*Etcetera*

F.S.D. (消防署) Fire Services Department

G.M. (總經理) General Manager

G.P.O. (郵政總局) General Post Office

H.K.P.F. (香港警務處) Hong Kong Police Force

h.p. (馬力/分期付款) horse-power / hire purchase

i.e. (即) that is

*Id Est*

J.P. (太平紳士) Justice of the Peace

Ltd. (有限) Limited

M.A. (文學碩士) Master of Arts

M.D. (醫學士) Doctor of Medicine

M.B., B.S. (內外全科醫生) Bachelor of Medicine, Bachelor of Science

M.B.A. (工商管理學士) Master of Business Administration

m.p.h.	( 每小時…里 )	miles per hour
Mr.	( 先生 )	Mister
Mrs.	( 夫人 )	Mistress
Messrs.	( 諸君 )	Gentlemen
	<i>Messieurs</i>	
N.B.	( 小心，注意 )	Note carefully
	<i>Nota Bene</i>	
No.	( 號數 )	Number
N.T.	( 新界 )	The New Territories
	( 新約「聖經」 )	The New testament
p.m.	( 下午 )	After noon
	<i>Post Meridiem</i>	
Ph.D.	( 哲學博士 )	Doctor of Philosophy
p.p.	( 過去分詞 )	past participle
P.S.	( 再者 )	postscript
P.T.O.	( 請翻閱後頁 )	Please turn over
Rev.	( 教士 )	Reverend
R.S.V.P.	( 請覆 )	Please reply
	<i>Répondez s'il vous plaît</i>	
U.K.	( 聯合王國 )	The United Kingdom
U.N.	( 聯合國 )	The United Nations
U.S.A.	( 美國 )	The United States of America
Via	( 取道 )	By way of
V.I.P.	( 重要人物 )	Very Important Person
w.e.f.	( 生效 )	with effect from
W.H.O.	( 世界衛生組織 )	World Health Organization
X' mas	( 聖誕節 )	Christmas
Y.M.C.A.	( 基督教男青年會 )	Young Men's Christian Association
Y.W.C.A.	( 基督教女青年會 )	Young Women's Christian Association



## Collective Nouns (集合名詞)

- An **army** of soldiers ————— (一隊軍隊)
- A **band** of musicians ————— (一隊樂隊)
- A **board** of directors ————— (一個董事會)
- A **bouquet** of flowers ————— (一束花)
- A **bowl** of rice ————— (一碗飯)
- A **brood** of chickens ————— (一窩小雞)
- A **bucket** of water ————— (一桶水)
- A **bunch** of bananas ————— (一串蕉)
- A **choir** of singers ————— (一團合唱團)
- A **class** of pupils ————— (一班學生)
- A **crew** of sailors ————— (一羣海員)
- A **crowd** of people ————— (一羣人)
- A **dozen** of eggs ————— (一打蛋)
- A **fleet** of ships ————— (一隊船)
- A **flight** of steps ————— (一段階梯)
- A **flight** of swallows ————— (一羣燕子)
- A **flock** of birds ————— (一羣鳥)
- A **flock** of sheep ————— (一羣羊)
- A **game** of football ————— (足球賽)
- A **gang** of thieves ————— (一幫竊賊)
- A **herd** of cattle ————— (一羣牛)
- A **lump** of sugar ————— (一塊糖)
- A **match** of basketball ————— (籃球比賽)
- A **nest** of mice ————— (一窩老鼠)
- A **note** of music ————— (一串音符)
- A **pack** of wolves ————— (一羣狼)
- A **pair** of glasses ————— (一對眼鏡)
- A **pair** of stockings ————— (一對長襪)
- A **pair** of trousers ————— (一條褲子)

A <b>piece</b> of chalk	———	( 一支粉筆 )
A <b>school</b> of whales	———	( 一羣鯨魚 )
A <b>set</b> of stamps	———	( 一套郵票 )
A <b>sheet</b> of paper	———	( 一張紙 )
A <b>shoal</b> of fish	———	( 一羣魚 )
A <b>swarm</b> of bees	———	( 一窩蜜蜂 )
A <b>team</b> of players	———	( 一隊運動員 )
A <b>tin</b> of cigarettes	———	( 一罐香煙 )
A <b>tribe</b> of natives	———	( 一族土人 )
A <b>troop</b> of monkeys	———	( 一羣猴子 )
A <b>yard</b> of cloth	———	( 一碼布 )

## EXERCISE 104

Give the short form of the underlined words. The first one is done for you.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1. He <u>does not</u> want to go.                | 1. _____  |
| 2. <u>She will</u> go to Japan.                  | 2. _____  |
| 3. <u>It is</u> a fine day.                      | 3. _____  |
| 4. <u>He has</u> gone.                           | 4. _____  |
| 5. I <u>cannot</u> swim properly.                | 5. _____  |
| 6. <u>Do not</u> shout in the classroom.         | 6. _____  |
| 7. I <u>am</u> not going.                        | 7. _____  |
| 8. I <u>have not</u> seen her for a long time.   | 8. _____  |
| 9. <u>Where has</u> he been all day?             | 9. _____  |
| 10. <u>We are</u> studying in an evening school. | 10. _____ |

## EXERCISE 105

Match the two columns to form suitable collective nouns. Use each word once only. The first one is done for you.

1. A <b>class</b> of	A. soldiers	1. _____ C
2. An <b>army</b> of	B. ships	2. _____
3. A <b>piece</b> of	C. pupils	3. _____
4. A <b>herd</b> of	D. flowers	4. _____
5. A <b>yard</b> of	E. singers	5. _____
6. A <b>fleet</b> of	F. monkeys	6. _____
7. A <b>bouquet</b> of	G. cattle	7. _____
8. A <b>bunch</b> of	H. music	8. _____
9. A <b>choir</b> of	I. chalk	9. _____
10. A <b>note</b> of	J. trousers	10. _____
	K. grapes	
	L. cloth	

### ■ Useful Common Words ( 常用詞語 )

#### (1) **Body** ( 身體 )

ankle ( 踝 )	blood ( 血 )	brain ( 腦 )
ear ( 耳 )	elbow ( 肘 )	eye ( 眼 )
eyebrow ( 眼眉 )	face ( 面 )	finger ( 手指 )
forehead ( 頸 )	hair ( 毛髮 )	heart ( 心臟 )
heel ( 跟 )	jaw ( 頸 )	joint ( 關節 )
knee ( 膝 )	knuckle ( 指節 )	leg ( 腿 )
limb ( 四肢 )	lung ( 肺 )	muscle ( 肌肉 )
nose ( 鼻 )	nostril ( 鼻孔 )	palm ( 手掌 )
pore ( 毛孔 )	pupil ( 瞳孔 )	shoulder ( 肩 )
skeleton ( 骨 )	skull ( 頭骨 )	stomach ( 胃 )
tongue ( 舌 )	thumb ( 姆指 )	throat ( 咽喉 )
vein ( 靜脈 )	waist ( 腰 )	wrist ( 手腕 )

## (2) **Clothing** ( 衣服 )

blouse ( 女裝上衣 )	boot ( 長靴 )	camisole ( 襪衣 )
cloak ( 斗篷 )	cotton ( 棉布 )	garment ( 衣服 )
hat ( 帽 )	handkerchief ( 手帕 )	jacket ( 外套 )
overcoat ( 外套 )	pajamas/pyjamas ( 睡衣褲 )	raincoat ( 雨衣 )
shirt ( 男裝襯衣 )	shoes ( 鞋 )	shorts ( 短褲 )
sport shirt ( 短袖襯衫 )	sweater ( 厚運動衫/毛衣 )	stocking ( 長襪 )
trousers ( 褲 )	waistcoat ( 背心 )	woolen cloth ( 呢絨 )

## (3) **Food** ( 食物 )

bacon ( 醃豬肉 )	beef ( 牛肉 )	biscuit ( 餅乾 )
bread ( 麵包 )	butter ( 牛油 )	cake ( 糕餅 )
cheese ( 乾乳酪 )	chicken ( 雞 )	chocolate ( 朱古力 )
cookie ( 曲奇餅 )	egg ( 蛋 )	ice-cream ( 雪糕 )
margarine ( 人造奶油 )	mutton ( 羊肉 )	noodle ( 麵條 )
onion ( 洋蔥 )	oyster ( 蠔 )	pork ( 豬肉 )
porridge ( 麥片粥 )	pudding ( 布丁 )	rice ( 米 )
salad ( 沙律 )	salmon ( 三文魚 )	sandwich ( 三文治 )
sausage ( 香腸 )	sauce ( 醬油 )	sugar ( 糖 )
spaghetti ( 意大利粉 )	steak ( 肉排 )	sushi ( 壽司 )
toast ( 烤麵包片 )		

## (4) **Drink** ( 飲品 )

beer ( 啤酒 )	cocoa ( 可可 )	coffee ( 咖啡 )
cognac ( 白蘭地酒 )	ginger-beer ( 薑啤酒 )	lemonade ( 檸檬水 )
milk ( 牛奶 )	orange juice ( 橙汁 )	soft drink ( 冷飲品 )
tea ( 茶 )	wine ( 酒 )	

## (5) **Building and Home** ( 建築物與家居 )

balcony ( 露台 )	bay window ( 窗台 )	bathroom ( 浴室 )
bed ( 床 )	bedroom ( 寢室 )	bungalow ( 平房 )
carpark ( 停車場 )	chimney ( 煙囪 )	concourse ( 大堂 )
commercial centre ( 商業中心 )		curtain ( 窗簾 )
cushion ( 椅墊 )	department store ( 百貨公司 )	dining room ( 飯廳 )
furniture ( 傢私 )	gallery ( 畫廊 )	housing estate ( 住宅區 )
industrial estate ( 工業區 )	kitchen ( 廚房 )	lavatory ( 洗手間 )
lift ( 電梯 )	living-room ( 客廳 )	mansion ( 大廈 )
mattress ( 床墊 )	pillow ( 枕頭 )	platform ( 月台 )
podium ( 高台 )	sky-scraper ( 摩天樓 )	study ( 書房 )
towel ( 毛巾 )	villa ( 別墅 )	warehouse ( 倉庫 )

## (6) School ( 學校 )

canteen	( 飯堂 )	chalk	( 粉筆 )
class	( 班 )	classroom	( 課室 )
college	( 學院 )	computer	( 電腦 )
desk	( 書桌 )	duster	( 粉擦 )
evening school	( 夜校 )	globe	( 地球儀 )

Institute of Vocational Education ( 專業教育學院 )

kindergarten	( 幼稚園 )	library	( 圖書館 )
map	( 地圖 )	notice board	( 佈告板 )
playground	( 運動場 )	primary school	( 小學 )
school master	( 校長 )	secondary school	( 中學 )
snack shop	( 小食店 )	staff room	( 教員室 )
time-table/schedule	( 時間表 )	university	( 大學 )
whiteboard	( 白板 )		

## (7) Occupation ( 職業 )

actor ( 演員 )	agent ( 代理人 )	author ( 作家 )
butcher ( 屠夫 )	carpenter ( 木匠 )	chemist ( 化學師 )
clerk ( 書記 )	dentist ( 牙醫 )	doctor ( 醫生 )
driver ( 司機 )	electrician ( 電器技師 )	engineer ( 工程師 )
flight attendant ( 空中服務員 )		gardener ( 園丁 )
grocer ( 雜貨商 )	hawker ( 推車小販 )	inspector ( 檢查者 )
journalist ( 新聞工作者 )		lawyer ( 律師 )
librarian ( 圖書館管理員 )	nurse ( 護士 )	painter ( 畫匠 )
pharmacist ( 藥劑師 )	police ( 警察 )	professor ( 教授 )
sailor ( 海員 )	security guard ( 護衛員 )	
shoemaker ( 鞋匠 )	soldier ( 兵士 )	solicitor ( 律師 )
tailor ( 裁縫 )	teacher ( 教師 )	tutor ( 家庭教師 )
waiter ( 男侍應 )	waitress ( 女侍應 )	

## (8) People and Family ( 人物與家庭 )

adult	( 成人 )	ancestor	( 祖先 )
aunt ( 姑, 嬸, 伯, 舅, 姨母 )		baby	( 嬰兒 )
brother	( 兄弟 )	brother-in-law ( 夫或妻的兄弟 )	
child	( 小孩 )	cousin ( 表/堂兄弟和姊妹 )	
daughter	( 女兒 )	daughter-in-law ( 媳婦 )	
father	( 父親 )	father-in-law	( 岳父 )

Godfather	(教父)	grandparents	(祖父祖母)
grandchild	(孫)	grand daughter	(孫女／外孫女)
grandfather	(祖父／外祖父)	grandmother	(祖母／外祖母)
grandson	(孫子／外孫子)	guest	(客人)
hostess	(女主人)	husband	(丈夫)
infant	(幼兒)	maid	(女僕)
mother	(母親)	nephew	(姪兒／外甥)
niece	(姪女／外甥女)	orphan	(孤兒)
parent	(父／母)	relative	(親戚)
sister	(姊妹)	son	(兒子)
son-in-law	(女婿)	uncle	(叔、伯、舅父、姑、姨丈)
visitor	(訪客)	widow	(寡婦)
widower	(鳏夫)	youth	(青年)

### (9) Hospital (醫院)

accident (意外)	ambulance (救護車)	blood test (驗血)
casualty (傷亡者)	clinic (診療所)	consultation (診症)
disease (疾病)	doctor (醫生)	dose (劑藥量)
fever (發熱)	hospital (醫院)	in-patient (住院病人)
injection (注射)	medicine (藥物)	nurse (護士)
operation (手術)	out-patient (門診病人)	patient (病人)
poison (毒藥)	pulse (脈搏)	scan (掃描)
surgeon (外科醫生)	tablet (藥片)	thermometer (探熱針)
ward (病房)	wheel chair (輪椅)	X-ray (X光)

### (10) Religion (宗教信仰)

Bible (聖經)	bishop (主教)	Brother (修士)
Buddhism (佛教)	cathedral (大教堂)	Catholic (天主教徒)
Christ (基督)	Christian (基督教徒)	Christianity (基督教)
church (聖堂)	clergy (牧師)	Father (神父)
God (上帝)	holy (神聖的)	Islam (回教)
missionary (傳教士)	monk (和尚)	Muslim (回教徒)
nun (尼姑)	Sister (修女)	temple (寺院)

## (11) Sports ( 運動 )

badminton ( 羽毛球 )	baseball ( 棒球 )	basketball ( 籃球 )
bowling ( 保齡球 )	boxing ( 拳擊 )	cricket ( 板球 )
dragon boat racing ( 龍舟比賽 )		fishing ( 釣魚 )
football ( 足球 )	golf ( 哥爾夫球 )	hockey ( 曲棍球 )
horse-racing ( 賽馬 )	horse-riding ( 騎馬 )	judo ( 柔道 )
martial art ( 武術 )	rowing ( 划艇 )	skating ( 溜冰 )
skiing ( 滑雪 )	swimming ( 游泳 )	table-tennis ( 乒乓球 )
tennis ( 網球 )	wrestling ( 摔角 )	yoga ( 瑜珈 )

## (12) Transport ( 交通工具 )

aeroplane ( 飛機 )	bicycle ( 單車 )	boat ( 船 )
carriage ( 四輪馬車 )	coach ( 旅遊巴 )	ferry ( 渡海輪 )
fire-engine ( 滅火車 )	helicopter ( 直升機 )	jetfoil ( 噴射船 )
Hong Kong International Airport ( 香港國際機場 )		lorry/truck ( 貨車 )
junk ( 中國帆船 )	liner ( 邮輪 )	motorcycle ( 摩托車 )
Mass Transit Railway ( 香港鐵路 )		Peak Tram ( 山頂纜車 )
Ngong Ping Cable Car ( 昂坪纜車 )		private car ( 私家車 )
rickshaw ( 人力車 )	scooter ( 腳踏車 )	public light bus ( 公共小型巴士 )
steamer ( 蒸汽船 )	taxi ( 的士 )	small vehicle ( 小型汽車 )
tram ( 電車 )		train ( 火車 )

## (13) Road and Bridge ( 道路和橋樑 )

Aberdeen Tunnel ( 香港仔隧道 )	aisle ( 通道 )
bridge ( 橋 )	Cross Harbour Tunnel ( 紅磡海底隧道 )
Eastern Harbour Tunnel ( 東區海底隧道 )	fly-over ( 天橋 )
highway ( 公路 )	kerb/curb ( 道路石邊 )
Lion Rock Tunnel ( 獅子山隧道 )	lane ( 巷 )
pavement ( 行人道 )	path ( 小徑 )
platform ( 月台 )	road ( 路 )
street ( 街 )	subway ( 地道 )
	traffic lights ( 交通燈 )
Tseung Kwan O Tunnel ( 將軍澳隧道 )	Tsing Ma Bridge ( 青馬大橋 )
Western Harbour Tunnel ( 西區海底隧道 )	zebra crossing ( 斑馬線 )

## (14) Time ( 時間 )

anniversary ( 周年紀念 )	annual ( 每年 )	April ( 四月 )
August ( 八月 )	Autumn ( 秋季 )	century ( 世紀 )
dawn ( 黎明 )	day ( 日 )	decade ( 十年 )
December ( 十二月 )	eve ( 前夕 )	evening ( 黃昏 )
February ( 二月 )	Friday ( 星期五 )	fortnight ( 兩星期 )
January ( 一月 )	July ( 七月 )	June ( 六月 )
March ( 三月 )	May ( 五月 )	minute ( 分 )
Monday ( 星期一 )	month ( 月 )	November ( 十一月 )

October (十月)	Saturday (星期六)	season (季節)
second (秒)	September (九月)	Spring (春季)
Summer (夏季)	Sunday (星期日)	Thursday (星期四)
Tuesday (星期二)	Wednesday (星期三)	Winter (冬季)

### (15) Festival (節日)

The Buddha's Birthda (佛誕)	Bun Festival (太平清醮)
Lunar New Year (農曆新年)	Ching Ming Festival (清明節)
Christmas (聖誕節)	Chung Yueng Festival (重陽節)
Easter (復活節)	Mid-Autumn Festival (中秋節)
National Day (國慶日)	Dragon Boat Festival (端午節)

### (16) Direction (方向)

East (東)	North (北)	North-east (東北)
North-west (西北)	South (南)	South-east (東南)
South-west (西南)	West (西)	

### (17) Travel and Interesting Places (旅行和景點)

airport (飛機場)	boarding (登機中)	boarding pass (登機証)
carriage (四輪馬車)	check in (辦登記手續)	coach (旅遊車)
concourse (大堂)	customs (海關)	express (快車)
fare (交通費)	Golden Bauhinia Square (金紫荊廣場)	
Giant Buddha (天壇大佛)		gate (門閘)
Hong Kong Disneyland (香港迪士尼樂園)		journey (旅行)
luggage (行李)	Ngong Ping 360 (昂坪360)	non-stop (不停站)
Ocean Park (海洋公園)	passenger (乘客)	pier/quay (碼頭)
platform (月台)	railway (鐵路)	station (站)
The Peak (太平山頂)	tourist (遊客)	traveller (旅客)
visitor (訪客)	Victoria Harbour (維多利亞港)	

### (18) Vegetable (蔬菜)

asparagus (蘆筍)	bean (豆)	broccoli (西蘭花)
cabbage (包心菜)	carrot (胡蘿蔔)	cauliflower (椰菜花)
courgette (翠玉瓜)	cucumber (青瓜)	garlic (蒜頭)
ginger (薑)	green bean sprout (芽菜仔)	lettuce (西生菜)
mushroom (蘑菇)	onion (洋蔥)	pea (豌豆)
potato (馬鈴薯)	sweet potato (甘薯)	turnip (蘿蔔)

### (19) Fruit (生果)

apple (蘋果)	apricot (杏)	banana (蕉)
------------	-------------	------------

blueberry ( 藍莓 )	cherry ( 櫻桃 )	date ( 葡萄 )
dragon fruit ( 火龍果 )	grape ( 葡萄 )	grapefruit ( 西柚 )
kiwi ( 奇異果 )	lemon ( 檸檬 )	mango ( 芒果 )
melon ( 蜜瓜 )	olive ( 橄欖 )	orange ( 橙 )
papaya ( 木瓜 )	peach ( 桃 )	peanut ( 花生 )
pear ( 梨 )	pineapple ( 菠蘿 )	pomelo ( 柚子 )
plum ( 梅, 李 )	star fruit ( 楊桃 )	strawberry ( 士多啤梨 )

## (20) **Flower** ( 花 )

bluebell ( 藍鈴花 )	chrysanthemum ( 菊花 )	daffodil ( 水仙花 )
daisy ( 雛菊 )	lily ( 百合花 )	lotus ( 蓮花 )
poppy ( 罂粟花 )	rose ( 玫瑰 )	sunflower ( 向日葵 )
tulip ( 郁金香 )	violet ( 紫羅蘭 )	

## (21) **Insect** ( 昆蟲 )

ant ( 螞蟻 )	bee ( 蜜蜂 )	beetle ( 甲蟲 )
butterfly ( 蝴蝶 )	caterpillar ( 毛蟲 )	cockroach ( 蟑螂 )
cricket ( 蟋蟀 )	dragonfly ( 蜻蜓 )	fly ( 苍蠅 )
grasshopper ( 蟋蟀 )	locust ( 蝗蟲 )	mosquito ( 蚊 )
moth ( 蛾 )	spider ( 蜘蛛 )	wasp ( 黃蜂 )

## (22) **Fish and Seafood** ( 魚類和海產 )

cod ( 鮭魚 )	crab ( 蟹 )	herring ( 鮭魚 )
lobster ( 龍蝦 )	mussel ( 青口 )	oyster ( 蠔 )
salmon ( 三文魚 )	sardine ( 沙丁魚 )	sea urchin ( 海膽 )
shark ( 鯊魚 )	shrimp ( 蝦 )	squid ( 墨魚 )

## (23) **Animal** ( 動物 )

ape ( 人猿 )	bat ( 蝙蝠 )	buffalo ( 水牛 )
bull ( 公牛 )	calf ( 小牛 )	cat ( 貓 )
camel ( 駱駝 )	cow ( 母牛 )	deer ( 鹿 )
dog ( 狗 )	dolphin ( 海豚 )	donkey ( 驢 )
elephant ( 象 )	fox ( 狐 )	frog ( 青蛙 )
giraffe ( 長頸鹿 )	goat ( 山羊 )	hare ( 野兔 )
horse ( 馬 )	kangaroo ( 袋鼠 )	kitten ( 小貓 )
lamb ( 綿羊 )	leopard ( 豹 )	lion ( 獅 )
lizard ( 蜥蜴 )	monkey ( 猴 )	mouse ( 小老鼠 )
mule ( 驢 )	ox ( 牛 )	pig ( 豬 )
pony ( 小馬 )	puppy ( 小狗 )	rabbit ( 兔 )

rat (大老鼠)	seal (海豹)	shark (鯊魚)
zebra (斑馬)	squirrel (松鼠)	tiger (虎)
tortoise (龜)	whale (鯨魚)	wolf (狼)

## F Homes (家)

<u>Creature</u>	<u>Home</u>		<u>Creature</u>	<u>Home</u>	
bee	hive	(蜂巢)	bird	nest	(雀巢)
cattle	shed	(家畜欄)	dog	kennel	(狗窩)
fox	den/hole	(狐穴)	hare	burrow	(野兔穴)
horse	stable	(馬槽)	king	palace	(宮殿)
lion	den	(獅穴)	monk	monastery	(寺院)
mouse	hole	(鼠穴)	person	house	(房屋)
nun	convent	(女修道院)	pigeon	dove-cote	(鴿房)
pig	sty	(豬欄)	rabbit	hutch	(兔籠)
prisoner	prison	(監獄)	soldier	barrack	(軍營)
sheep	fold	(羊欄)	tiger	lair	(虎穴)
spider	web	(蜘蛛網)			

## G Sounds (聲音)

A bear <b>growls.</b> ----- (熊咆哮)	A bee <b>humms.</b> ----- (蜂嗡)
A bird <b>chirps.</b> ----- (鳥兒唧唧叫)	A bull <b>bellows.</b> ----- (牛吼)
A cat <b>mews.</b> ----- (貓兒咪咪叫)	A cock <b>crows.</b> ----- (公雞喔喔叫)
A cow <b>moos.</b> ----- (牛鳴)	A cricket <b>chirps.</b> ----- (蟋蟀唧唧叫)
A dog <b>barks.</b> ----- (狗吠)	A donkey <b>brays.</b> ----- (驢叫)
A duck <b>quacks.</b> ----- (鴨子嘎嘎叫)	An elephant <b>trumpets.</b> ----- (象叫)
A fox <b>barks.</b> ----- (狐吠)	A frog <b>croaks.</b> ----- (青蛙咯咯叫)
A hedgehog <b>grunts.</b> ----- (箭豬叫)	A hen <b>cackles.</b> ----- (母雞咯咯叫)
A horse <b>neighs.</b> ----- (馬嘶)	A lamb <b>bleats.</b> ----- (羊咩咩叫)
A lion <b>roars.</b> ----- (獅吼)	A mouse <b>squeaks.</b> ----- (老鼠吱吱叫)
An otter <b>laughs.</b> ----- (水獺叫)	An owl <b>hoots.</b> ----- (貓頭鷹叫)
A pig <b>piglet.</b> ----- (豬叫)	A pigeon <b>coos.</b> ----- (鴿子咕咕叫)
A swallow <b>twitters.</b> ----- (燕子喃喃叫)	A turkey <b>gobbles.</b> ----- (火雞咯咯叫)
A wolf <b>howls.</b> ----- (狼嗥)	

## H Young animals (小動物)

bear	cub (小熊)	cat	kitten (小貓)
cow	calf (小牛)	deer	fawn (小鹿)

dog ——— puppy ( 小狗 )  
fox ——— cub ( 小狐 )  
goose ——— gosling ( 小鵝 )  
horse ——— foal ( 小馬 )  
lion ——— cub ( 小獅 )  
sheep ——— lamb ( 小綿羊 )

duck ——— duckling ( 小鴨 )  
goat ——— kid ( 小山羊 )  
hen ——— chicken ( 小母雞 )  
leopard ——— cub ( 小豹 )  
pig ——— piggy ( 小豬 )  
tiger ——— cub ( 小虎 )

## EXERCISE 106

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. A young goat is called a  A. kid.  B. lamb.  
 C. cub.  D. calf.
2. A young dog is called a  A. chicken.  B. foal.  
 C. gosling.  D. puppy.
3. A young sheep is called a  A. lamb.  B. kitten.  
 C. kid.  D. cub.
4. A young cat is called a  A. kid.  B. cub.  
 C. calf.  D. kitten.
5. A young horse is called a  A. gosling.  B. chicken.  
 C. kitten.  D. foal.
6. A king lives in a  A. convent.  B. palace.  
 C. prison.  D. stable.
7. A dog is kept in a  A. burrow.  B. stable.  
 C. hutch.  D. kennel.
8. A monk lives in a  A. nest.  B. monastery.  
 C. barrack.  D. convent.
9. A horse lives in a  A. sty.  B. web.  
 C. kennel.  D. stable.
10. A dog  A. croaks.  B. barks.  
 C. roars.  D. mews.

## PRONUNCIATION (發音法)

'S', 'Z' and 'IZ' Sounds ( 'S', 'Z' 和 'IZ' 音。 )

- (1) Pronounced "s" after a voiceless consonant : "f", "k", "p", "t" or "th". 在無聲啞音"f", "k", "p", "t" 或 "th" 後加上 's' 字母時，讀 's' 音。

e.g. proof	——	proofs	cat	——	cats
roof	——	roofs	hat	——	hats
book	——	books	hit	——	hits
take	——	takes	laugh	——	laughs
help	——	helps	insect	——	insects
lip	——	lips	length	——	lengths
map	——	maps	month	——	months

- (2) Pronounced "z" after a vowel or a voiced consonant: "b", "d", "g", "l", "m", "n", "ng", "ve", "th" or "er".

在響音或有聲啞音"b", "d", "g", "l", "m", "n", "ng", "ve", "th"或"er"後加上 's' 字母時，讀 'z' 音。

e.g. cab	——	cabs	run	——	runs
mob	——	mobs	John	——	John's
hand	——	hands	king	——	kings
hold	——	holds	sing	——	sings
bag	——	bags	live	——	lives
rug	——	rvgs	hive	——	hives
pencil	——	pencils	breathe	——	breathes
school	——	schools	bathe	——	bathes
room	——	rooms	colour	——	colours
beam	——	beams	reader	——	readers

- (3) Pronounced "iz" when "s" or "es" is added to the words ending in "ch", "sh", "s", "x" or "z".

當一個字的字尾是'ch', 'sh', 's', 'x'或 'z'後加上's' 或 'es' 時，讀 'IZ' 音。

e.g. bench	——	benches	place	——	places
church	——	churches	please	——	pleases
dish	——	dishes	box	——	boxes
bush	——	bushes	fox	——	foxes
cross	——	crosses	freeze	——	freezes
class	——	classes	prize	——	prizes

## **B** "T", "ID" and "D" Sounds ( 'T', 'ID' 或 'D' 音 )

- (1) The "d" or "ed" is pronounced "T" when the words end in "ch", "gh", "sh", "ce", "f", "k", "p", "s" or "x".

在一個字的字尾是 'ch', 'gh', 'sh', 'ce', 'f', 'k', 'p', 's' 或 'x' 後加上 'd' 或 'ed' 時，讀 'T' 音。

e.g. march	——	marched	walk	——	walked
touch	——	touched	ask	——	asked
wish	——	wished	help	——	helped
finish	——	finished	drop	——	dropped
dance	——	danced	kiss	——	kissed
face	——	faced	pass	——	passed
puff	——	puffed	mix	——	mixed
laugh	——	laughed	box	——	boxed

- (2) The "ed" is pronounced "ID" when ending in "d" or "t".

在一個字的字尾是 'd' 或 't' 後加上 'ed' 時，讀 'ID' 音。

e.g. end	——	ended	visit	——	visited
add	——	added	act	——	acted
flood	——	flooded	relate	——	related
divide	——	divided	hate	——	hated
need	——	needed	paint	——	painted
sound	——	sounded	count	——	counted

- (3) The "d" or "ed" is pronounced "D" when the words end in voiced consonants. 在一個字的字尾是有聲啞音後加上 'd' 或 'ed' 時，讀 'D' 音。

e.g. mail	——	mailed	kill	——	killed
hurry	——	hurried	name	——	named
judge	——	judged	wonder	——	wondered
marry	——	married	praise	——	praised
advise	——	advised	learn	——	learned
carry	——	carried	rob	——	robbed
belong	——	belonged	reply	——	replied

## **B** Voiceless Letters ( 不發聲音字母 )

- (1) "b"—voiceless

e.g. climb, dumb, doubt, lamb, thumb.

(2) "h" — voiceless

e.g. heir, hour, honour, honest, what, when, which.

(3) "k" — voiceless

e.g. knit, knight, knock, knot, know.

(4) "p" — voiceless

e.g. empty.

(5) "t" — voiceless

e.g. castle, fasten, listen, often, whistle.

(6) "w" — voiceless

e.g. answer, sword, write, wrong.

(7) Others: "n", "f", "gh".

e.g. autumn, half, light, taught, weigh, thought, though.

## D

The following pairs of words are of the same sound.

(下面每行左右兩個字是同音字。)

air	(空氣)	heir	(繼承人)
aloud	(高聲地)	allowed	(准許)
bare	(赤裸的)	bear	(熊)
blew	(吹)	blue	(藍色)
born	(生於)	borne	(負荷)
by	(近, 沿)	buy	(買入)
course	(課程)	coarse	(粗劣的)
dear	(親愛的)	deer	(小鹿)
fair	(公平的)	fare	(車費)
hair	(頭髮)	hare	(野兔)
hear	(聽見)	here	(在這裏)
herd	(一羣)	heard	(聽見)
hole	(洞穴)	whole	(完整)
male	(雄性)	mail	(郵件)
meat	(獸肉)	meet	(遇見)
new	(新的)	knew	(知道)
none	(一點也沒有)	nun	(尼姑)
nose	(鼻子)	knows	(知道)

our	(我們的)	hour	(小時)
pail	(水桶)	pale	(青白)
peace	(和平)	piece	(一塊)
raise	(提起)	rays	(光線)
red	(紅色)	read	(閱讀)
right	(右方)	write	(寫作)
rode	(騎)	road	(馬路)
sail	(航行)	sale	(出售)
see	(見)	sea	(海)
sell	(賣出)	cell	(電池)
sew	(縫紉)	sow	(播種)
some	(一些)	sum	(總數)
son	(兒子)	sun	(太陽)
steal	(偷竊)	steel	(鋼)
story	(故事)	storey	(一層樓)
tail	(尾巴)	tale	(故事)
waist	(腰部)	waste	(浪費)
wait	(等候)	weight	(重量)
weak	(瘦弱)	week	(一週)
wear	(穿著)	ware	(貨品)
wood	(木材)	would	(將會)

## EXERCISE 107

Fill in the blank with the correct word.

Example: He wanted to sell his house. (cell, sell)

1. He was born in Hong Kong. ( born, borne )
2. He writes his diary every day. ( dairy, diary )
3. I am glad that you are so kind to accept my request.  
( except, accept )
4. We must pay our fares when we ride on a bus. ( fares, fair )
5. The farmers sow seeds in early Summer. ( sow, sew )
6. We go to church to pray. ( pray, play )
7. Can you hear me? ( here, hear )

8. This is a good \_\_\_\_\_ for building school. ( site, sight )
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ is fine today. ( weather, whether )
10. There are seven days in a \_\_\_\_\_. ( weak, week )

## EXERCISE 108

If the word sounds "ID", write ID. e.g. : added ID

If the word sounds "D", write D. e.g. : called D

If the word sound "T" , write T. e.g. : kicked T

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. opened _____   | 2. nursed _____   |
| 3. wanted _____   | 4. helped _____   |
| 5. walked _____   | 6. belonged _____ |
| 7. ordered _____  | 8. hated _____    |
| 9. laughed _____  | 10. boxed _____   |
| 11. hoped _____   | 12. danced _____  |
| 13. acted _____   | 14. added _____   |
| 15. counted _____ | 16. mixed _____   |
| 17. replied _____ | 18. named _____   |
| 19. tired _____   | 20. sounded _____ |

## EXERCISE 109

If the word ends in "IZ" sound, write IZ. e.g. forces IZ

If the word ends in "Z" sound, write Z. e.g. rise Z

If the word ends in "S" sound, write S. e.g. price S

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. books _____     | 2. washes _____  |
| 3. rooms _____     | 4. lips _____    |
| 5. hits _____      | 6. colours _____ |
| 7. ties _____      | 8. matches _____ |
| 9. recognise _____ | 10. games _____  |
| 11. ducks _____    | 12. office _____ |

13. bridges \_\_\_\_\_
15. hoofs \_\_\_\_\_
17. pushes \_\_\_\_\_
19. faces \_\_\_\_\_

14. watches \_\_\_\_\_
16. horses \_\_\_\_\_
18. fence \_\_\_\_\_
20. mix \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 110

*In each line underline the word which rhymes with the word on the left.*

Example: KEY      they she lay lie sky

1. FIGHT      tie lies tight fought
2. PICK      taken made sick lip pack
3. NOISE      horse toys buys house wise
4. ICE      eyes ties nice rise cries
5. SING      pink ink wing faint bring
6. MILD      wide wild tie guide side
7. DIE      sign kite might sight lie
8. KNIFE      live leave life knee leaf
9. TAKE      woke egg sack make check
10. CAUGHT      thought ought nought fought taught

## EXERCISE 111

*Choose the word which does NOT rhyme with the rest.*

Example: kill chill till fill child      child \_\_\_\_\_

1. hut nut shut put cut      1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. deer dear tear rear sour      2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. old low told sold cold      3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. buy my why try brine      4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. try fry kite sky cry      5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. shot shoot pot knot not      6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. quite height sight tight quiet      7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. thin win pin sink sin      8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. fact act fate exact cracked      9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. fan sand expand ban can't      10. \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 112

*Find out one word in each line below which does NOT rhyme with the word on the left. Write the word in the margin on the right. If all the words rhyme, write X.*

- |                    |                          |           |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <b>NEW</b> →    | view knew few sew        | 1. _____  |
| 2. <b>HAT</b> →    | fat dad mat pat          | 2. _____  |
| 3. <b>ALONE</b> →  | none bone stone sown     | 3. _____  |
| 4. <b>ARM</b> →    | alarm farm harm          | 4. _____  |
| 5. <b>STEAL</b> →  | peel kneel feel steel    | 5. _____  |
| 6. <b>GOLD</b> →   | sold cold told goat      | 6. _____  |
| 7. <b>FEAR</b> →   | tear near bear here      | 7. _____  |
| 8. <b>HEIGHT</b> → | sight tight might weight | 8. _____  |
| 9. <b>OUR</b> →    | flower hour sour flour   | 9. _____  |
| 10. <b>GROW</b> →  | though go through flow   | 10. _____ |

## EXERCISE 113

*Underline the correct ending sound of each of the following words.*

- |               |              |                |              |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. THESE—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' | 2. BOXES—      | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' |
| 3. TEXTS—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' | 4. TABLES—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' |
| 5. BEGINS—    | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' | 6. CHOOSES—    | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' |
| 7. TAKES—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' | 8. SISTERS—    | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' |
| 9. SAVES—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' | 10. ASHES—     | 'S' 'Z' 'IZ' |
| 11. DANCED—   | 'T' 'D' 'ID' | 12. PRETENDED— | 'T' 'D' 'ID' |
| 13. ARRIVED—  | 'T' 'D' 'ID' | 14. SOUNDED—   | 'T' 'D' 'ID' |
| 15. DIVIDED—  | 'T' 'D' 'ID' | 16. TROOPED—   | 'T' 'D' 'ID' |
| 17. BELONGED— | 'T' 'D' 'ID' | 18. WATCHED—   | 'T' 'D' 'ID' |
| 19. COPIED—   | 'T' 'D' 'ID' | 20. MOVED—     | 'T' 'D' 'ID' |

## TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES (句子改寫法)

Here are some ways of rewriting sentences:-

### A By using the comparison (用比較法)

- e.g. 1. Peter is less friendly than his sister.  
改寫: Peter is not so friendly as his sister.  
2. No one in the class is as fat as Mary.  
改寫: Mary is the fattest girl in the class.

### B By changing the voice (改變語態)

- e.g. The girl hit the ball.  
改寫: The ball was hit by the girl.

### C By shortening the clause (縮短子句)

- e.g. The water is so cold that we cannot swim now.  
改寫: The water is too cold for us to swim now.

### D By changing the speech (改變引語)

- e.g. The man said, "I have caught a fish."  
改寫: The man said that he had caught a fish.

### E By using the conjunction "but" or "although" (用連接詞 "but" 或 "although")

- e.g. Although he is poor, he is happy.  
改寫: He is poor but he is happy.

### F By using an adjective or an adverb (用形容詞或副詞)

- e.g. Mr. Chan is a careful driver.  
改寫: Mr. Chan drives carefully.

### G By using an Interrogative Sentence (用疑問句)

- e.g. For what reason did she cry?  
改寫: Why did she cry?

### H By using a gerund instead of an infinitive (用動名詞代替不定詞)

- e.g. It is very easy to learn Chinese.  
改寫: Learning Chinese is very easy.

## 1 By using "necessary" or "must" (用 "necessary" 或 "must")

e.g. It is necessary for children to obey their parents.

改寫: Children must obey their parents.

## 2 By using the conjunction "if", "unless" or "or"

(用連接詞 "if", "unless" 或 "or")

e.g. He works hard, he wants to pass his examination.

改寫: a. If he works hard, he will pass his examination.

b. Unless he works hard, he will not pass his examination.

c. He should work hard, or he will not pass his examination.

## EXERCISE 114

Rewrite each of the following sentences in another way. Do not change its meaning. You are given the beginning of each new sentence.

1. She did not come to school yesterday.

She was \_\_\_\_\_

2. Peter is the tallest boy in the class.

No one in the class \_\_\_\_\_

3. Mr. Chan said, "I am going home now."

Mr. Chan said that \_\_\_\_\_

4. Your sewing is not as good as your sister's.

Your sewing is \_\_\_\_\_

5. The hunter is chasing a rabbit.

A rabbit is \_\_\_\_\_

6. He is rich but he is still greedy.

Although he \_\_\_\_\_

7. If you do not go away, I shall send for a policeman.

Unless you \_\_\_\_\_

8. He is a daily visitor to the hospital.

He visits \_\_\_\_\_

9. We could do nothing to help him.

There was nothing \_\_\_\_\_

10. Mary is sitting and Jane is sitting too.

Both Mary \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 115

*Rewrite each of the following sentences in another way. Do not change its meaning. You are given the beginning of each new sentence.*

1. I like tea better than coffee.  
I prefer \_\_\_\_\_
  2. Work hard or your teacher will punish you.  
If you do not \_\_\_\_\_
  3. Whom does this car belong to?  
Whose \_\_\_\_\_
  4. They give him a gold watch.  
He is given \_\_\_\_\_
  5. My sister likes to read magazines.  
My sister is \_\_\_\_\_
  6. My brother is more honest than Tom.  
Tom is \_\_\_\_\_
  7. He said, "I shall go tomorrow."  
He said that \_\_\_\_\_
  8. A horse is drawing a cart.  
A cart \_\_\_\_\_
  9. My brother studied for two hours, then he took a rest.  
After studying \_\_\_\_\_
  10. Neither Tom nor Peter knew what to do.  
Tom and Peter \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 116

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. If you don't stop playing, you will be tired.

  - A. Unless you don't stop
  - B. Unless you stop playing, you will be tired.
  - C. Although you stop
  - D. Although you don't stop

2. It is necessary for Peter to arrive at 9 p.m.

- A. Peter must arrived at 9 p.m.
- B. Peter must arrive at 9 a.m.
- C. Peter must arrive at 9 p.m.
- D. Peter must be arrived at 9 p.m.

3. She was very rich but she was unhappy.

- A. but she was not rich.
- B. and she was very rich.
- C. although she was very rich.
- D. because she was very poor.

4. I am very weak and I cannot walk any further.

- A. I am too strong to walk very further.
- B. I am too weak to run any further.
- C. I am such weak to run any further.
- D. I am too weak to walk any further.

5. Mr. Lee is taller than I.

- A. taller
- B. as tall as Mr. Lee.
- C. as short as
- D. shorter than

6. It would be better for me to go home early.

- A. going
- B. went
- C. to go home early.
- D. go

7. Tom is the thinnest boy in our class.

- A. the thinnest
- B. thinner than any other boys in our class.
- C. as thin as
- D. not so thin as

8. It is very difficult to swim across the harbour.

- A. Swimming across the harbour is very difficult.
- B. Swimming across the harbour was very difficult.
- C. Swim across the harbour is very difficult.
- D. Swimming to the harbour is very difficult.

9. My father built a hut near the hill last year.

- A hut       A. has been built by my father  
               B. was built by my father      near the hill last year.  
               C. was built by his father  
               D. is being built by my father

10. Don't write rubbish on the board.

- No one       A. is allowed  
               B. are allowed to      write rubbish on the board.  
               C. was allowed to  
               D. is allowed to

## EXERCISE 117

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the 'circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. Miss Mary Lee will fly to London.

- Miss Mary Lee       A. went to London by sea.  
               B. will go to London by plane.  
               C. will go to London by train.  
               D. goes to London by plane.

2. Tom is clever and his sister is clever too.

- A. Both Tom and his sister  
               B. Neither Tom nor his sister      are clever.  
               C. Either Tom or his sister  
               D. Both Tom and his brother

3. This food is very hot, and I cannot eat it.

- This food is too       A. hot for me to eat.  
               B. cold for me to eat.  
               C. hot for him to eat.  
               D. hot for eating.

4. After I had washed my hands, I took my dinner.

- I washed my hands       A. after I had taken my dinner.  
               B. before I took my lunch.  
               C. before I took my dinner.  
               D. while I took my dinner.

5. Was the picture drawn by her?

- Did she
- A. draw the picture?
  - B. drew the picture?
  - C. drawn the picture?
  - D. draws the picture?

6. It was so hot that we could not sleep well last night.

- A. It might be too hot
  - B. It was too hot
  - C. It is too hot
  - D. It must be too hot
- for us to sleep well last night.

7. The boy drank the whole cup of milk.

- The whole cup of milk
- A. was not drunk by the boy.
  - B. were drunk by the boy.
  - C. was drunk by the boy.
  - D. has been drunk by the boy.

8. Although it rains heavily, he still goes out.

- He still goes out
- A. because of the heavy rain.
  - B. for the heavy rain.
  - C. though in the heavy rain.
  - D. in spite of the heavy rain.

9. I played a joke on my little brother.

- A. I make fun of
  - B. I made fun of
  - C. I made fun to
  - D. I made fun on
- my little brother.

10. The teacher asked the girl, "What is your name?"

- The teacher asked the girl
- A. what his name was.
  - B. what her name was.
  - C. what her name is.
  - D. what was her name.

## COMPREHENSIONS ( 閱讀理解 )

## EXERCISE 118

Read this passage carefully.

Hundreds of years ago there was a boy who lived with his uncle in a town. The boy was only seven years old but he was very bright. One day his uncle took him to a small village. The villagers had just caught a lion and locked it inside a big cage. Men, women and children came to see the lion. They stood near the cage to watch it. Suddenly one of the children took up a stone and threw it at the lion. The lion roared in anger. All the people were frightened and ran away, but the boy did not move. "Aren't you afraid?" his uncle asked him. "Why should I be afraid? The lion cannot walk out," replied the boy.

1

5

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. The boy who lived in  A. a city  B. a village  C. a town  D. an island was seven years old.
2. The villagers locked the  A. lion  B. tiger  C. fox  D. bear inside a big cage.
3. People stood near the cage to  A. hear  B. hit  C. watch  D. find the lion.
4. They ran away because  A. there was a fire.  B. there was a typhoon.  C. the lion roared loudly.  D. the lion sprang upon them.
5. Read line 7-8. The  A. his uncle did not ask him to go away.  B. he did not hear the lion's roar.  C. he was too frightened to move.  D. the lion could not come out. boy still stood there because

## EXERCISE 119

*Read this passage carefully.*

Last Summer while we were at the seaside for our holiday, a fearful thing happened. One night. Jack, my brother, could not sleep. He smelt something burning.

"What is that smell?" he said to himself. "I am sure something is burning." So he got up and opened the door quickly. At once a lot of smoke came into the room. He began to call out loudly, "Fire! Fire!"

He made so much noise that he was heard by everyone. Some people ran down the stairs through the smoke. Others jumped out of the windows and were hurt. Soon the fire engines came. In a short time the fire was put out. Luckily no one was burnt to death, but a great damage was done to the hotel where we stayed. It was found out afterwards that someone had thrown a lighted cigarette to a curtain while he was reading, then he fell asleep.

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. Read line 1. What is **TRUE** about Jack?  
 A. the writer's friend.  
 B. the writer's brother.  
 C. a handsome and tall man.  
 D. our relative.
  
2. When Jack discovered the fire,  
 A. he called the police.  
 B. he could not walk.  
 C. he shouted loudly.  
 D. he opened the door quickly.
  
3. Some people were hurt because  
 A. they were burnt badly.  
 B. they jumped out of the windows.  
 C. they fell down the stairs.  
 D. they ran too quickly.
  
4. The fire was put out by  
 A. the people who stayed in the hotel.  
 B. the hotel staff.  
 C. Jack and his brother.  
 D. the brave firemen.
  
5. The fire was put out  
 A. after a long time.  
 B. in a minute or two.  
 C. two days later.  
 D. very soon.

## EXERCISE 120

Read this passage carefully.

On a fine day in Summer, Mary and Tom went to the beach. They were rowing on the sea when they heard a sudden cry.

The cry came from a lady whose boat was overturned. It was a long way from the beach and the lady was splashing about in the water. She appeared to be in danger of drowning. At that time a life guard ran down to the beach to help her. He swam out to her quickly. A crowd gathered to watch what was happening. All the people were excited when the life guard reached the lady. At last the lady was brought safely ashore.

1

5

1. *Fill in the blanks.*

One fine day in e.g. Summer Mary and Tom 1) on the sea when they heard a sudden cry from a 2).

The lady whose boat was 3) was 4) about in the water. She was 5) and needed help.

A life guard 6) out to her quickly and brought her safely 7). The 8) watching the accident was all very excited.

2. Read lines 3-5. Which of the following is **TRUE**?

- A. The lady knew how to swim.
- B. There was another person in her boat.
- C. The lady might be drowned.
- D. The lady rowed to the shore at last.

## EXERCISE 121

Read this passage carefully.

Recent newspaper reports about children's eating habits are very worrying. Very few children enjoy balanced meals and the number of overweight children has nearly doubled in the last 10 years. Doctors warn that overweight children are more prone to heart disease and diabetes. There was no television and no computer games in the past and children spent a lot of time outdoors playing active games that kept them fit. Most children also had to walk fairly long distances to school. Today, children spend a lot of time indoors watching TV or playing computer games. Fewer children play outdoors. Most children are driven to school or use public transports. If you want to grow up strong and healthy, you must exercise and eat the right food. You have to learn how to become responsible for your own health.

Fill in the blanks.

Healthy people are those who 1) and eat the 2) food. Yet, most children nowadays do not eat 3) meals and the number of 4) children has been increasing. These children may develop 5) and 6) easily.

Children in the past were more active because they had no 7) and no 8) games. They played more 9) games outdoors and had to 10) to school more often.

## EXERCISE 122

*Read this passage carefully.*

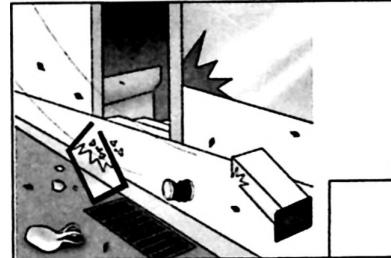
On the first day of September, a very terrible typhoon came to visit Hong Kong. The number ten typhoon signal was put up. Nobody dared to go out, for the rain was very heavy, the wind was very strong, and the thunder was like the lion's roar. The broken windows, glass and other things were seen everywhere on the street. Some of the old buildings were blown down. The huts built on the hills were blown down too. The big rocks rolled down from the mountain. Many ships were blown ashore. Thousands of people lost their homes and belongings. The worst of all, many people were killed in the accidents.

*Tick the pictures which illustrate the damage caused by the typhoon.*

1.



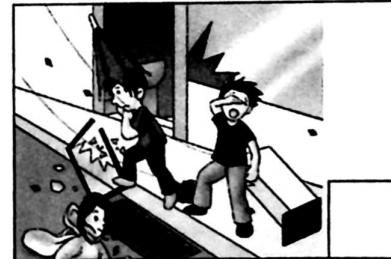
2.



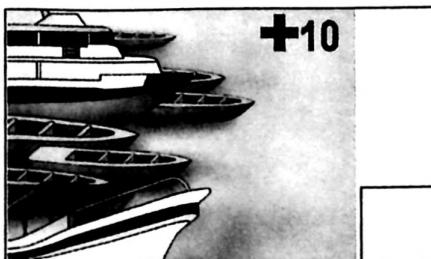
3.



4.



5.



6.



## EXERCISE 123

*Read the following passage carefully.*

Nancy looked at the clock on the wall. It was a quarter past ten. She began to walk along the streets of London until she came to a very big hotel that Mr. Brand had mentioned to Andrew, her elder brother. The clock struck eleven. She went quickly to the door where she was stopped by a well-dressed porter.

"Young woman, you have to dress well here. What do you want?" the porter said very rudely. "I want to see a lady who is staying in this hotel," said Nancy. "Her name is Miss Rowe."

"You don't seem to know any lady here," said the man, pushing her towards the door. "Get out!"

Another staff appeared, and Nancy repeated her request to him. "What is your name, and why do you want to see Miss Rowe?"

"It's no use saying either," replied the girl, "but I must see the lady." She spoke to the second man who seemed to be kinder. "Please tell Miss Rowe that a young woman earnestly wants to speak to her alone." Then the man went upstairs, and returned, telling Nancy to follow him. He led her into a very large and beautiful room where a young and beautiful lady was reading. She looked at Nancy as she was entering.

*Put together the first and the second half of the sentences. Write down the letters of the second half that best match the first half. The first one is done for you.*

### FIRST HALF

- 1) The hotel was in ...
- 2) Mr. Brand had told Andrew the name ...
- 3) Nancy took forty-five minutes to get to ...
- 4) Nancy was Andrew's ...
- 5) Nancy arrived at the hotel at ...
- 6) The first porter of the hotel did not ...
- 7) Nancy was stopped by the porter ...
- 8) Nancy refused to tell ...
- 9) The second staff was more polite than ...
- 10) Nancy was led to Miss Rowe by ...
- 11) Nancy wanted to talk to ...
- 12) Miss Rowe was reading while ...

### Answers

1. ( D )
2. ( )
3. ( )
4. ( )
5. ( )
6. ( )
7. ( )
8. ( )
9. ( )
10. ( )
11. ( )
12. ( )

### SECOND HALF

- A. the hotel.
- B. younger sister.
- C. Miss Rowe alone.
- D. London.
- E. eleven o'clock
- F. of the hotel.
- G. her name.
- H. Nancy was led into her room.
- I. let her go into the hotel.
- J. the first one.
- K. because she was poorly dressed.
- L. the second staff.



## EXERCISE 124

*Read the advertisement carefully.*

### Fabulous Kit for Smart Detectives!

Want to be a detective? Come to the Active Kids Store at Pacific Department Store! Special detective toy kits are on sale. Only for this week, from March 20 – 27 !

The following items are included :-

- a notepad and a detective badge (\$50)
- a voice-recording machine (\$164)
- two magnifying glasses (\$30)
- a measuring tape (\$18)
- a set of binoculars (\$200)
- two sets of rubber gloves (\$20)
- a fingerprint kit (\$70)
- a chain with two locks and keys (\$50)
- a set of walkie-talkie (\$380)



You can save more if you buy the entire kit at \$669!  
(only 50 kits available)



*Answer the following questions:*

1. What is the main purpose of the advertisement?

---

---

2. Where can you buy the detective toy kit?

---

---

3. Which is the most expensive item in the kit?

---

---

4. Which two items are of the same price?

---

---

5. What is the cheapest way to buy the whole kit? Why?

---

---

---

## EXERCISE 125

*Read the e-mail carefully.*

Date: 20 May, Thursday, 2:30 pm  
From: "David Leung" <davidleung@seasideinn.com>  
To : "Mariana Ma" <mma@hotmail.com>  
Subject: Facilities at Seaside Inn Group

Dear Ms Ma,

Thank you for your interest in Seaside Inn. We have a range of bungalows to suit all budgets. There are also special prices for groups of five or more.

Each bungalow offers you the following:

- sea view from every room
- a fully equipped kitchen or meal service
- a washing machine with dryer and an iron
- a cable TV and internet
- a swimming pool and a heated spa
- a BBQ area
- a tennis court
- an on-site manager to attend to your needs.

All bungalows are close to major attractions and boat rides!

You can visit our website at <http://www.seaside-inn.com.sg> to have a photo tour of our bungalows first. Please ring our receptionist on 23385758 to book your holiday home.

We are sure you and your family will have a holiday of fun at Seaside Inn.

Yours sincerely,

David Leung

(Customer Relations Representative)

*A. Blacken the circle next to the correct answer.*

1. The purpose of the email is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. to promote the Seaside Inn business  
 B. to sell bungalows  
 C. to make an announcement  
 D. to build a bungalow
  
2. Read lines 10 - 17. Which of the following facilities **ARE NOT** included?  
 A. A cinema and a spa.  
 B. A supermarket and a kitchen.  
 C. A tennis court and a service manager.  
 D. A cinema and a supermarket.

*B. Answer the questions.*

1. Who could get a special price in renting a bungalow?  

---

2. Name four activities provided at the bungalow?  

---

3. If you are staying at the bungalow, how would you best find the information you need?  

---

4. Whom should you contact to book your accommodation?  

---

## EXERCISE 126

*Read this passage carefully.*

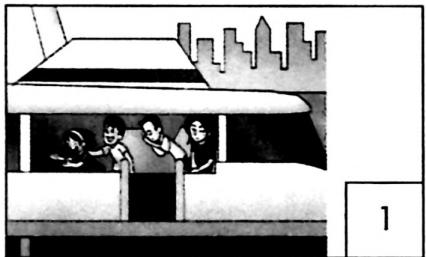
It was a fine day last Saturday. Mr. and Mrs. Ho went to Macau with their children Man Ying and Mo Kit. They took the turbojet. The children felt very excited on their first boat journey.

When they arrived at Macau, it was an early morning. They took their breakfast and then they went to visit the Fire Services Museum. Afterwards they visited several churches and schools by bus. After lunch, they travelled round the town in a car which took them to explore some famous places.

Macau is a small place where traffic is not heavy. The people living there are polite and kind and are always willing to help the tourists. An old lady recommended a small restaurant to them where they tried traditional pork chop bun and egg tart. When they came back to Hong Kong, the children told their neighbours that they had enjoyed a wonderful trip.

*Rearrange and number the following pictures in the correct order according to the passage. The first one is done for you.*

1.



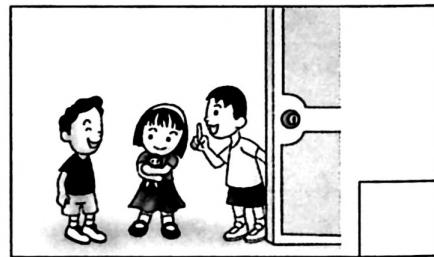
2.



3.



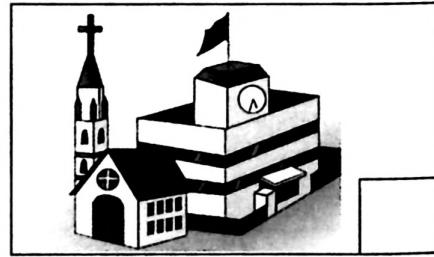
4.



5.



6.



## TEST 1

## Section A

Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.

1. The Christmas gift       A. of       B. with       C. from       D. about      my uncle arrived in time.
2. The Filipino maid looks       A. at       B. after      the kids while their  
                                     C. into      parents are at work.  
                                     D. from
3. The children go to school       A. of       B. from      bus every day.  
                                     C. by       D. with
4. Tanya will go shopping if she       A. had       B. have      time in the afternoon.  
                                     C. has       D. has had
5. The river       A. has flown       B. flows      under the bridge.  
                                     C. flow       D. can flow
6. The tiger is a       A. gentle       B. tiny      animal.  
                                     C. fierce       D. slow

7. The rain poured on me and I was  A. cold  B. dirty  C. hot  D. wet through.

8. You must  A. answer  B. told  C. speak  D. said the question at once.

9. Mary is polite  A. because  B. and  C. unless  D. but some children are rude.

10.  A. But  B. Unless  C. Because  D. If they hurry up, they will miss the flight.

11. I shall not speak to her  A. when  B. since  C. until  D. because she apologizes.

12. A place where water is collected and kept is  A. a well.  B. a waterfall.  C. a reservoir.  D. an oasis.

13. "Can I speak to May Chan, please?"  
 A. Yes. Speaking.  
 B. Yes. What's the matter?  
 C. Yes. What's up?  
 D. Yes. Talking now.

14. "She is happy, isn't she?"
- A. "Yes, she is."
  - B. "No, she is."
  - C. "Yes, she does."
  - D. "No, she doesn't."
15. "Do you know anyone here?" "No, I know
- A. no one."
  - B. someone."
  - C. some."
  - D. everyone."
16. "Who's taken away my ruler?" "I
- A. am."
  - B. was."
  - C. took."
  - D. have."
17. Nurses speak
- A. quickly
  - B. gently
  - C. noisily
  - D. loudly
18. The children played
- A. wisely
  - B. happily
  - C. lazily
  - D. kindly
19. As mouse is to mice, so is child to
- A. babies.
  - B. boys.
  - C. children.
  - D. girls.
20. As feather is to bird, so is scale to
- A. tiger.
  - B. turtle.
  - C. fish.
  - D. nest.

## Section B

Part 1: *Fill in the blanks with a suitable word from the box.*

protect consider were up killed whenever was

Once upon a time there 1) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of mice in a house. In order to get rid of the mice, the owner of the house bought a big cat from a pet shop. The cat was so fierce that many of the mice were caught and 2) \_\_\_\_\_.

All the mice in the house gathered together one night to think of ways to 3) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves. Many of them put 4) \_\_\_\_\_ various suggestions but none of them was useful.

At last, a young mouse stood up and said, "We must put a bell round the cat's neck so that it will give us alarms 5) \_\_\_\_\_ our enemy comes."

The plan was received with loud cheer. Then an old mouse rose and said, "The plan is perfect but we must first 6) \_\_\_\_\_ who is going to bell the cat."

Part 2: *Fill in the blanks with a suitable preposition from the box.*

off in for about at with to on by

- 1) Your hairstyle is quite similar \_\_\_\_\_ David Beckham's.
- 2) Why are you mad \_\_\_\_\_ me?
- 3) Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ playing squash tomorrow?
- 4) Are you worried \_\_\_\_\_ your exam tomorrow?
- 5) Sydney in Australia is famous \_\_\_\_\_ the Opera House.
- 6) He is not very keen \_\_\_\_\_ football.
- 7) The mobile phone is equipped \_\_\_\_\_ different functions.
- 8) The meeting needs to be called \_\_\_\_\_ due to the typhoon.

**Part 3:** *Rearrange the order of the words to make polite and meaningful requests.*

- 1) go out / would / like / weekend / you / to / this / ?

---

Page 10 of 10

- 2) turn off / could / for me / you / please / fan / the / ? ,

---

Page 10 of 10

- 3) you / me / tell/ / could /now /time/ the/ ?

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

- 4) mind / repeating / again / that / you / would / ?

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

- 5) all of / you / lesson / please / the / stay / behind/ would/after/?

## Section C

## Part 1:

- A. In the passage below there is no punctuation. Rewrite the passage in the space given, putting in all the punctuations and capital letters.

peter he whispered can you get that book for me please

this one asked peter

yes that's the one thank you peter

B. Arrange the sentences in the right order. Rewrite the letters in the space provided. Follow the example.

- Example: A. Then we went to the cinema.  
B. Tom and I had a meal last night.  
C. We enjoyed the film very much.

1. B 2. A 3. C

1. A. "Ah, yes, I remember. We went there last Christmas.  
The food there was good."  
B. "What about Hong Kong Restaurant?"  
C. "Yes, it was. I see that you have a good memory."  
D. "Where shall we go for dinner?"

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_

2. A. George and his family often go to the beach.  
B. Sometimes his father swims with George and  
his brother.  
C. His parents usually sit on the beach and watch their  
children swim.  
D. They always have a good time at the seaside.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_

3. A. "Yes. Have you ever been to America?"  
B. "Would you try this chocolate?"  
C. "You're lucky. I've never been there, but I hope to go  
next year."  
D. "Only on a short visit. I went to New York."  
E. "Thank you. Is this American chocolate?"  
F. "Well, I'm sure you'll enjoy your visit very much."

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_ 6. \_\_\_\_\_

## Part 2:

*Rewrite each of the sentences below in another way but do not change the meaning. You are given parts of each new sentences.*

1. They said that they liked sweets very much.

\_\_\_\_\_ they said.

2. "Open the door," he said to John.

He \_\_\_\_\_

3. It was very difficult to count them.

Counting \_\_\_\_\_

4. Who is the owner of this house?

Who \_\_\_\_\_

5. It is necessary for my sister to work hard.

My sister must \_\_\_\_\_

6. He didn't come because of having a cold.

He didn't come because he \_\_\_\_\_

7. "Would you come to tea with me today?" asked May.

"Would you," asked Mary, " \_\_\_\_\_

"

8. "Where," asked Jack, "have you left your rain coat?"

"Where \_\_\_\_\_

asked Jack.

Part 3: *Read the following passage carefully:*

Power of Love (POL) is a charitable organization which was formed in 1998 by a group of working professional with the goals to improve the school conditions and to support the poor children in rural areas of Mainland China. POL depends largely on donations made by the public as well as those organizations which share their value.

In the past 10 years, POL has rebuilt and expanded 56 ruined schools in Guangxi, Guangdong, Qinghai, Guizhou, Hubei, Henan, Hunan, Inner Mongolia and Gansu provinces of China. These schools have a total student population of over 10,000.

A. *Put a tick (✓) against the ones that are true and a cross (✗) against the ones that are false.*

1. In line 1. Power of Love (POL) is a profit-making organization. ( )
2. Read lines 7 - 8. POL built 56 new schools in China. ( )
3. Read lines 7 - 10. POL rebuilt and expanded 56 decayed schools in 9 provinces of China. ( )
4. Read lines 4 - 6. The public donations support POL financially. ( )
5. Read lines 1 - 4. POL was organized by a group of housewives who want to help the poor in China. ( )

B. *From the passage, find words which have similar meanings as the following.*

1. aims \_\_\_\_\_
2. relies \_\_\_\_\_
3. make things better \_\_\_\_\_
4. enlarged \_\_\_\_\_
5. aid \_\_\_\_\_

## Section D

*Below is a newsletter of St. Peter's Church. Read it carefully and use the information to complete the email on the next page.*

### St. Peter's Church

5<sup>th</sup> June

#### Donations and Volunteers required for Needy Children

We need help in collecting used items for children of the Po Leung Kuk Children's Home.

Do you have the following items to donate?

- |              |              |                    |
|--------------|--------------|--------------------|
| - Clothing   | - Bedding    | - Toys             |
| - Story book | - Stationery | - Sports equipment |
| - Computer   | - Games      |                    |

Donation deadline: 25th July

*Can you be a volunteer at the Children's Home Games Day?*

Date: 7 July

Time: 2 pm – 6 pm

Duties: (a) to set up 6 game stalls at the indoor sports ground  
(b) to lead entertainment programmes including obstacle race, folk dance, singing contest and riddles competition  
(c) to prepare snacks and drinks for fund-raising purpose

Requirements: - age 17 or above

- be able to attend training session on 15th and 16th June

Thank you for your kind help!

*Fill in each blank with one word only.*

To: Brenda Leung <bleung@flymail.com>

From: Henry Ho <henryf@flymail.com>

Date: 8 July

Subject: A Wonderful Experience

Dear Brenda,

Do you remember the Children's Home Game Day I told you before? It was held (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and I was a volunteer. You have to be at (2) \_\_\_\_\_ 17 years old in order to be a volunteer. Being a volunteer was harder than I thought. I had to attend a 2-day (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in June and there was so much preparation work to do.

All volunteers were divided into (4) \_\_\_\_\_ groups working on different things. I like music and sports, so of course I chose the group working on (5) \_\_\_\_\_ programmes. Among all the programmes, the obstacle race was the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ popular. Oh, there was so much fun!

Have you donated anything to the church? I have looked into my wardrobe and found lots of (7) \_\_\_\_\_ board games and clothing. Don't forget to bring your donations to the church (8) \_\_\_\_\_ 25th July.

This is such a wonderful experience. You must join me next time.

Cheers,

Henry

# TEST 2

## Section A

*Choose the best answer. Blacken the circle next to the corresponding letter.*

1. He could  A. hardly  B. just  C. only  D. hard see because the light was very dim.
2. This hill is hard to climb, it is so  A. deep.  B. steep.  C. shiny.  D. heavy.
3. At Chinese New Year, firecrakers are not allowed to be let  A. of.  B. from.  C. off.  D. with.
4. The clothes were worn  A. out.  B. down.  C. up.  D. off.
5. I wanted to play football  A. but  B. because my friends were too  C. so busy.  D. when
6. I have been working hard  A. until  B. since  C. unless  D. in March this year.

7. We did not want him to go because it was dark  A. but  B. and  C. if  D. or windy.

8. The headmaster is very busy now. He  A. has  B. had  C. will have  D. is having a meeting with the teachers.

9. She took another sweet when her mother  A. talked  B. will talk  C. was talking  D. talks on the phone.

10. Is this the way  A. where  B. who  C. which  D. whom leads to Shek O Beach?

11. My uncle  A. whom  B. who  C. where  D. whose you saw yesterday is here.

12. Do you see the dog  A. which  B. whose  C. who  D. whom leg is hurt?

13. A boy who protects sheep is called a  A. farmer.  B. doctor.  C. scientist.  D. shepherd.

14. A small ship which carries people and goods across harbour is a \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. fairy
- B. fallow
- C. sampan
- D. ferry

15. A book in which we find the meanings of words is a \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. dictation
- B. dictionary
- C. dictator
- D. detective

16. Don't despise \_\_\_\_\_ poor.

- A. any
- B. some
- C. an
- D. the

17. Her mother bought \_\_\_\_\_ sweets.

- A. an
- B. many
- C. much
- D. very little

18. It was so cold that there were \_\_\_\_\_ people in the street.

- A. many
- B. any
- C. few
- D. a few

19. Tom is studying in \_\_\_\_\_ University of Hong Kong.

- A. the
- B. any
- C. a
- D. an

20. Water is a liquid, but when it freezes it becomes a \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. square.
- B. circle.
- C. solid.
- D. volume.

## Section B

### Part 1:

A) Fill in the blanks with suitable words from the box.

wearing    on    never    writer    located    born    but

Beatrix Potter is the 1) \_\_\_\_\_ of the best-selling children's book "The Tale of Peter Rabbit". She was 2) \_\_\_\_\_ on 28<sup>th</sup> July, 1866 in London. She was the only daughter of Rupert Potter who was a wealthy man. Miss Potter loved animals and countryside very much. Painting was her favourite hobby and she spent a lot of time on drawing animals. She 3) \_\_\_\_\_ went to school, but was taught at home by a governess.

In 1905, Potter moved to "Hill Top Farm", one of the farms she owned in the Lake District which is 4) \_\_\_\_\_ at the north western part of England. Since then, she published a number of children's books with watercolor illustrations which usually showed animal characters 5) \_\_\_\_\_ human clothes.

Potter died 6) \_\_\_\_\_ 22<sup>nd</sup> December, 1943. She left several thousand acres of land, including Hill Top Farm, to the National Trust which is a charity organization aiming at protecting the countryside of the United Kingdom.

B) Find out suitable words from the passage which have similar meanings as the followings.

- 1) rich \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) author \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) private teacher \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) rural area \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) sole \_\_\_\_\_

## Part 2:

*Each of the following sentences contains ONE mistake.*

- \* Underline the mistake and write down the correct one in the blank.
- \* If there is a missing word, mark the position of the missing word with a "^" and write down the missing word in the blank.
- \* If there is an extra word, cross it out and write it down in the blank.

e.g. Are you coming to the party Saturday?

on

1. The new mobile phone come with many additional functions such as camera and internet connection. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Congratulation on your success. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Nobody is listening because of the talk is very boring. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do anybody know how to unlock the programme? \_\_\_\_\_
5. This course focuses grammar and writing skills. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The Kwun Tong Town Centre Redevelopment Project will be finish in 2031. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The tropical cyclone in Burma killed at least 351 people and damaged thousands of building. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The number of secondary schools decrease due to the low birth rate in recent years. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Myra, as well as Susana, loves cooking. She has decided set up a cake shop in Tsim Sha Tsui. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Peter: "Why doesn't you come and join us?"  
Andy: "I'd love to, but I'm quite tied up at the moment. You guys have fun." \_\_\_\_\_

## Section C

## Part 1:

*In the passage below there is no punctuation. Write the passage in the space given, putting in all the punctuations and capital letters.*

what is the matter the mother asked

i drank some of that said the girl and I feel sick i thought

it was a nice soup but it tasted liked soap

oh dear exclaimed the mother

## Part 2:

*Put a word in each blank. The word you write must be the correct form of the word given on the left.*

1. **OBEY** The dog did as he was told and sat down \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. **DANGER** It was \_\_\_\_\_ to cross the road without looking.
  3. **FAT** He is the \_\_\_\_\_ of all the boys in the class.
  4. **SECOND** Next year I shall go to a \_\_\_\_\_ school.
  5. **SELL** I didn't expect the book to have such a good \_\_\_\_\_.

Part 3: Choose one word from the list on the left, and put it after the word given on the right.

Example: teller

Bank teller

stop

1. Ferry \_\_\_\_\_

car

2. Bus \_\_\_\_\_

pier

3. Fire \_\_\_\_\_

animal

4. Typhoon \_\_\_\_\_

signal

5. Zebra \_\_\_\_\_

flame

6. private \_\_\_\_\_

crossing

7. extinct \_\_\_\_\_

Part 4: Put in or delete "the" where necessary.

- 1) London is well known for having the cold and wet weather.

Answer: London is well known for having the cold and wet weather.

- 2) In Nepal, many people live in the mountains.

Answer: In Nepal, many people live in the mountains.

- 3) It's getting very hot and humid. Can you switch on air-conditioner?

Answer: It's getting very hot and humid. Can you switch on air-conditioner?

- 4) It takes no time to fall in love, but it takes you the years to know what love is .

Answer: It takes no time to fall in love, but it takes you the years to know what love is.

- 5) Susan has been living in USA for 10 years.

Answer: Susan has been living in USA for 10 years.

**Part 5: Put in "a" or "an" or delete it where necessary.**

- 1) Can you suggest me ways to build popular blog?

**Answer:** Can you suggest me ways to build popular blog?

- 2) An air pollution is getting very serious in Hong Kong as result of the rapid development in Guongdong province.

**Answer:** An Air pollution is getting very serious in Hong Kong as result of the rapid development in Guongdong province.

- 3) Jason loves girl with a long hair.

**Answer:** Jason loves girl with a long hair.

- 4) To find out more information, please take look at the website.

**Answer:** To find out more information, please take look at the website.

- 5) There is big gap between the rich and the poor in Hong Kong.

**Answer:** There is big gap between the rich and the poor in Hong Kong.

**Part 6: Read the following passage carefully.**

1  
5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55  
60  
65  
70  
75  
80  
85  
90  
95  
100  
105  
110  
115  
120  
125  
130  
135  
140  
145  
150  
155  
160  
165  
170  
175  
180  
185  
190  
195  
200  
205  
210  
215  
220  
225  
230  
235  
240  
245  
250  
255  
260  
265  
270  
275  
280  
285  
290  
295  
300  
305  
310  
315  
320  
325  
330  
335  
340  
345  
350  
355  
360  
365  
370  
375  
380  
385  
390  
395  
400  
405  
410  
415  
420  
425  
430  
435  
440  
445  
450  
455  
460  
465  
470  
475  
480  
485  
490  
495  
500  
505  
510  
515  
520  
525  
530  
535  
540  
545  
550  
555  
560  
565  
570  
575  
580  
585  
590  
595  
600  
605  
610  
615  
620  
625  
630  
635  
640  
645  
650  
655  
660  
665  
670  
675  
680  
685  
690  
695  
700  
705  
710  
715  
720  
725  
730  
735  
740  
745  
750  
755  
760  
765  
770  
775  
780  
785  
790  
795  
800  
805  
810  
815  
820  
825  
830  
835  
840  
845  
850  
855  
860  
865  
870  
875  
880  
885  
890  
895  
900  
905  
910  
915  
920  
925  
930  
935  
940  
945  
950  
955  
960  
965  
970  
975  
980  
985  
990  
995  
1000  
1005  
1010  
1015  
1020  
1025  
1030  
1035  
1040  
1045  
1050  
1055  
1060  
1065  
1070  
1075  
1080  
1085  
1090  
1095  
1100  
1105  
1110  
1115  
1120  
1125  
1130  
1135  
1140  
1145  
1150  
1155  
1160  
1165  
1170  
1175  
1180  
1185  
1190  
1195  
1200  
1205  
1210  
1215  
1220  
1225  
1230  
1235  
1240  
1245  
1250  
1255  
1260  
1265  
1270  
1275  
1280  
1285  
1290  
1295  
1300  
1305  
1310  
1315  
1320  
1325  
1330  
1335  
1340  
1345  
1350  
1355  
1360  
1365  
1370  
1375  
1380  
1385  
1390  
1395  
1400  
1405  
1410  
1415  
1420  
1425  
1430  
1435  
1440  
1445  
1450  
1455  
1460  
1465  
1470  
1475  
1480  
1485  
1490  
1495  
1500  
1505  
1510  
1515  
1520  
1525  
1530  
1535  
1540  
1545  
1550  
1555  
1560  
1565  
1570  
1575  
1580  
1585  
1590  
1595  
1600  
1605  
1610  
1615  
1620  
1625  
1630  
1635  
1640  
1645  
1650  
1655  
1660  
1665  
1670  
1675  
1680  
1685  
1690  
1695  
1700  
1705  
1710  
1715  
1720  
1725  
1730  
1735  
1740  
1745  
1750  
1755  
1760  
1765  
1770  
1775  
1780  
1785  
1790  
1795  
1800  
1805  
1810  
1815  
1820  
1825  
1830  
1835  
1840  
1845  
1850  
1855  
1860  
1865  
1870  
1875  
1880  
1885  
1890  
1895  
1900  
1905  
1910  
1915  
1920  
1925  
1930  
1935  
1940  
1945  
1950  
1955  
1960  
1965  
1970  
1975  
1980  
1985  
1990  
1995  
2000  
2005  
2010  
2015  
2020  
2025  
2030  
2035  
2040  
2045  
2050  
2055  
2060  
2065  
2070  
2075  
2080  
2085  
2090  
2095  
2100  
2105  
2110  
2115  
2120  
2125  
2130  
2135  
2140  
2145  
2150  
2155  
2160  
2165  
2170  
2175  
2180  
2185  
2190  
2195  
2200  
2205  
2210  
2215  
2220  
2225  
2230  
2235  
2240  
2245  
2250  
2255  
2260  
2265  
2270  
2275  
2280  
2285  
2290  
2295  
2300  
2305  
2310  
2315  
2320  
2325  
2330  
2335  
2340  
2345  
2350  
2355  
2360  
2365  
2370  
2375  
2380  
2385  
2390  
2395  
2400  
2405  
2410  
2415  
2420  
2425  
2430  
2435  
2440  
2445  
2450  
2455  
2460  
2465  
2470  
2475  
2480  
2485  
2490  
2495  
2500  
2505  
2510  
2515  
2520  
2525  
2530  
2535  
2540  
2545  
2550  
2555  
2560  
2565  
2570  
2575  
2580  
2585  
2590  
2595  
2600  
2605  
2610  
2615  
2620  
2625  
2630  
2635  
2640  
2645  
2650  
2655  
2660  
2665  
2670  
2675  
2680  
2685  
2690  
2695  
2700  
2705  
2710  
2715  
2720  
2725  
2730  
2735  
2740  
2745  
2750  
2755  
2760  
2765  
2770  
2775  
2780  
2785  
2790  
2795  
2800  
2805  
2810  
2815  
2820  
2825  
2830  
2835  
2840  
2845  
2850  
2855  
2860  
2865  
2870  
2875  
2880  
2885  
2890  
2895  
2900  
2905  
2910  
2915  
2920  
2925  
2930  
2935  
2940  
2945  
2950  
2955  
2960  
2965  
2970  
2975  
2980  
2985  
2990  
2995  
3000  
3005  
3010  
3015  
3020  
3025  
3030  
3035  
3040  
3045  
3050  
3055  
3060  
3065  
3070  
3075  
3080  
3085  
3090  
3095  
3100  
3105  
3110  
3115  
3120  
3125  
3130  
3135  
3140  
3145  
3150  
3155  
3160  
3165  
3170  
3175  
3180  
3185  
3190  
3195  
3200  
3205  
3210  
3215  
3220  
3225  
3230  
3235  
3240  
3245  
3250  
3255  
3260  
3265  
3270  
3275  
3280  
3285  
3290  
3295  
3300  
3305  
3310  
3315  
3320  
3325  
3330  
3335  
3340  
3345  
3350  
3355  
3360  
3365  
3370  
3375  
3380  
3385  
3390  
3395  
3400  
3405  
3410  
3415  
3420  
3425  
3430  
3435  
3440  
3445  
3450  
3455  
3460  
3465  
3470  
3475  
3480  
3485  
3490  
3495  
3500  
3505  
3510  
3515  
3520  
3525  
3530  
3535  
3540  
3545  
3550  
3555  
3560  
3565  
3570  
3575  
3580  
3585  
3590  
3595  
3600  
3605  
3610  
3615  
3620  
3625  
3630  
3635  
3640  
3645  
3650  
3655  
3660  
3665  
3670  
3675  
3680  
3685  
3690  
3695  
3700  
3705  
3710  
3715  
3720  
3725  
3730  
3735  
3740  
3745  
3750  
3755  
3760  
3765  
3770  
3775  
3780  
3785  
3790  
3795  
3800  
3805  
3810  
3815  
3820  
3825  
3830  
3835  
3840  
3845  
3850  
3855  
3860  
3865  
3870  
3875  
3880  
3885  
3890  
3895  
3900  
3905  
3910  
3915  
3920  
3925  
3930  
3935  
3940  
3945  
3950  
3955  
3960  
3965  
3970  
3975  
3980  
3985  
3990  
3995  
4000  
4005  
4010  
4015  
4020  
4025  
4030  
4035  
4040  
4045  
4050  
4055  
4060  
4065  
4070  
4075  
4080  
4085  
4090  
4095  
4100  
4105  
4110  
4115  
4120  
4125  
4130  
4135  
4140  
4145  
4150  
4155  
4160  
4165  
4170  
4175  
4180  
4185  
4190  
4195  
4200  
4205  
4210  
4215  
4220  
4225  
4230  
4235  
4240  
4245  
4250  
4255  
4260  
4265  
4270  
4275  
4280  
4285  
4290  
4295  
4300  
4305  
4310  
4315  
4320  
4325  
4330  
4335  
4340  
4345  
4350  
4355  
4360  
4365  
4370  
4375  
4380  
4385  
4390  
4395  
4400  
4405  
4410  
4415  
4420  
4425  
4430  
4435  
4440  
4445  
4450  
4455  
4460  
4465  
4470  
4475  
4480  
4485  
4490  
4495  
4500  
4505  
4510  
4515  
4520  
4525  
4530  
4535  
4540  
4545  
4550  
4555  
4560  
4565  
4570  
4575  
4580  
4585  
4590  
4595  
4600  
4605  
4610  
4615  
4620  
4625  
4630  
4635  
4640  
4645  
4650  
4655  
4660  
4665  
4670  
4675  
4680  
4685  
4690  
4695  
4700  
4705  
4710  
4715  
4720  
4725  
4730  
4735  
4740  
4745  
4750  
4755  
4760  
4765  
4770  
4775  
4780  
4785  
4790  
4795  
4800  
4805  
4810  
4815  
4820  
4825  
4830  
4835  
4840  
4845  
4850  
4855  
4860  
4865  
4870  
4875  
4880  
4885  
4890  
4895  
4900  
4905  
4910  
4915  
4920  
4925  
4930  
4935  
4940  
4945  
4950  
4955  
4960  
4965  
4970  
4975  
4980  
4985  
4990  
4995  
5000  
5005  
5010  
5015  
5020  
5025  
5030  
5035  
5040  
5045  
5050  
5055  
5060  
5065  
5070  
5075  
5080  
5085  
5090  
5095  
5100  
5105  
5110  
5115  
5120  
5125  
5130  
5135  
5140  
5145  
5150  
5155  
5160  
5165  
5170  
5175  
5180  
5185  
5190  
5195  
5200  
5205  
5210  
5215  
5220  
5225  
5230  
5235  
5240  
5245  
5250  
5255  
5260  
5265  
5270  
5275  
5280  
5285  
5290  
5295  
5300  
5305  
5310  
5315  
5320  
5325  
5330  
5335  
5340  
5345  
5350  
5355  
5360  
5365  
5370  
5375  
5380  
5385  
5390  
5395  
5400  
5405  
5410  
5415  
5420  
5425  
5430  
5435  
5440  
5445  
5450  
5455  
5460  
5465  
5470  
5475  
5480  
5485  
5490  
5495  
5500  
5505  
5510  
5515  
5520  
5525  
5530  
5535  
5540  
5545  
5550  
5555  
5560  
5565  
5570  
5575  
5580  
5585  
5590  
5595  
5600  
5605  
5610  
5615  
5620  
5625  
5630  
5635  
5640  
5645  
5650  
5655  
5660  
5665  
5670  
5675  
5680  
5685  
5690  
5695  
5700  
5705  
5710  
5715  
5720  
5725  
5730  
5735  
5740  
5745  
5750  
5755  
5760  
5765  
5770  
5775  
5780  
5785  
5790  
5795  
5800  
5805  
5810  
5815  
5820  
5825  
5830  
5835  
5840  
5845  
5850  
5855  
5860  
5865  
5870  
5875  
5880  
5885  
5890  
5895  
5900  
5905  
5910  
5915  
5920  
5925  
5930  
5935  
5940  
5945  
5950  
5955  
5960  
5965  
5970  
5975  
5980  
5985  
5990  
5995  
6000  
6005  
6010  
6015  
6020  
6025  
6030  
6035  
6040  
6045  
6050  
6055  
6060  
6065  
6070  
6075  
6080  
6085  
6090  
6095  
6100  
6105  
6110  
6115  
6120  
6125  
6130  
6135  
6140  
6145  
6150  
6155  
6160  
6165  
6170  
6175  
6180  
6185  
6190  
6195  
6200  
6205  
6210  
6215  
6220  
6225  
6230  
6235  
6240  
6245  
6250  
6255  
6260  
6265  
6270  
6275  
6280  
6285  
6290  
6295  
6300  
6305  
6310  
6315  
6320  
6325  
6330  
6335  
6340  
6345  
6350  
6355  
6360  
6365  
6370  
6375  
6380  
6385  
6390  
6395  
6400  
6405  
6410  
6415  
6420  
6425  
6430  
6435  
6440  
6445  
6450  
6455  
6460  
6465  
6470  
6475  
6480  
6485  
6490  
6495  
6500  
6505  
6510  
6515  
6520  
6525  
6530  
6535  
6540  
6545  
6550  
6555  
6560  
6565  
6570  
6575  
6580  
6585  
6590  
6595  
6600  
6605  
6610  
6615  
6620  
6625  
6630  
6635  
6640  
6645  
6650  
6655  
6660  
6665  
6670  
6675  
6680  
6685  
6690  
6695  
6700  
6705  
6710  
6715  
6720  
6725  
6730  
6735  
6740  
6745  
6750  
6755  
6760  
6765  
6770  
6775  
6780  
6785  
6790  
6795  
6800  
6805  
6810  
6815  
6820  
6825  
6830  
6835  
6840  
6845  
6850  
6855  
6860  
6865  
6870  
6875  
6880  
6885  
6890  
6895  
6900  
6905  
6910  
6915  
6920  
6925  
6930  
6935  
6940  
6945  
6950  
6955  
6960  
6965  
6970  
6975  
6980  
6985  
6990  
6995  
7000  
7005  
7010  
7015  
7020  
7025  
7030  
7035  
7040  
7045  
7050  
7055  
7060  
7065  
7070  
7075  
7080  
7085  
7090  
7095  
7100  
7105  
7110  
7115  
7120  
7125  
7130  
7135  
7140  
7145  
7150  
7155  
7160  
7165  
7170  
7175  
7180  
7185  
7190  
7195  
7200  
7205  
7210  
7215  
7220  
7225  
7230  
7235  
7240  
7245  
7250  
7255  
7260  
7265  
7270  
7275  
7280  
7285  
7290  
7295  
7300  
7305  
7310  
7315  
7320  
7325  
7330  
7335  
7340  
7345  
7350  
7355  
7360  
7365  
7370  
7375  
7380  
7385  
7390  
7395  
7400  
7405  
7410  
7415  
7420  
7425  
7430  
7435  
7440  
7445  
7450  
7455  
7460  
7465  
7470  
7475  
7480  
7485  
7490  
7495  
7500  
7505  
7510  
7515  
7520  
7525  
7530  
7535  
7540  
7545  
7550  
7555  
7560  
7565  
7570  
7575  
7580  
7585  
7590  
7595  
7600  
7605  
7610  
7615  
7620  
7625  
7630  
7635  
7640  
7645  
7650  
7655  
7660  
7665  
7670  
7675  
7680  
7685  
7690  
7695  
7700  
7705  
7710  
7715  
7720  
7725  
7730  
7735  
7740  
7745  
7750  
7755  
7760  
7765  
7770  
7775  
7780  
7785  
7790  
7795  
7800  
7805  
7810  
7815  
7820  
7825  
7830  
7835  
7840  
7845  
7850  
7855  
7860  
7865  
7870  
7875  
7880  
7885  
7890  
7895  
7900  
7905  
7910  
7915  
7920  
7925  
7930  
7935  
7940  
7945  
7950  
7955  
7960  
7965  
7970  
7975  
7980  
7985  
7990  
7995  
8000  
8005  
8010  
8015  
8020  
8025  
8030  
8035  
8040  
8045  
8050  
8055  
8060  
8065  
8070  
8075  
8080  
8085  
8090  
8095  
8100  
8105  
8110  
8115  
8120  
8125  
8130  
8135  
8140  
8145  
8150  
8155  
8160  
8165  
8170  
8175  
8180  
8185  
8190  
8195  
8200  
8205  
8210  
8215  
8220  
8225  
8230  
8235  
8240  
8245  
8250  
8255  
8260  
8265  
8270  
8275  
8280  
8285  
8290  
8295  
8300  
8305  
8310  
8315  
8320  
8325  
8330  
8335  
8340  
8345  
8350  
8355  
8360  
8365  
8370  
8375  
8380  
8385  
8390  
8395  
8400  
8405  
8410  
8415  
8420  
8425  
8430  
8435  
8440  
8445  
8450  
8455  
8460  
8465  
8470  
8475  
8480  
8485  
8490  
8495  
8500  
8505  
8510  
8515  
8520  
8525  
8530  
8535  
8540  
8545  
8550  
8555  
8560  
8565  
8570  
8575  
8580  
8585  
8590  
8595  
8600  
8605  
8610  
8615  
8620  
8625  
8630  
8635  
8640  
8645  
8650  
8655  
8660  
8665  
8670  
8675  
8680  
8685  
8690  
8695  
8700  
8705  
8710  
8715  
8720  
8725  
8730  
8735  
8740  
8745  
8750  
8755  
8760  
8765  
8770  
8775  
8780  
8785  
8790  
8795  
8800  
8805  
8810  
8815  
8820  
8825  
8830  
8835  
8840  
8845  
8850  
8855  
8860  
8865  
8870  
8875  
8880  
8885  
8890  
8895  
8900  
8905  
8910  
8915  
8920  
8925  
8930  
8935  
8940  
8945  
8950  
8955  
8960  
8965  
8970  
8975  
8980  
8985  
8990  
8995  
9000  
9005  
9010  
9015  
9020  
9025  
9030  
9035  
9040  
9045  
9050  
9055  
9060  
9065  
9070  
9075  
9080  
9085  
9090  
9095  
9100  
9105  
9110  
9115  
9120  
9125  
9130  
9135  
9140  
9145  
9150  
9155  
9160  
9165  
9170  
9175  
9180  
9185  
9190  
9195  
9200  
9205  
9210  
9215  
9220  
9225  
9230  
9235  
9240  
9245  
9250  
9255  
9260  
9265  
9270  
9275  
9280  
9285  
9290  
9295  
9300  
9305  
9310  
9315  
9320  
9325  
9330  
9335  
9340  
9345  
9350  
9355  
9360  
9365  
9370  
9375  
9380  
9385  
9390  
9395  
9400  
9405  
9410  
9415  
9420  
9425  
9430  
9435  
9440  
9445  
9450  
9455  
9460  
9465  
9470  
9475  
9480  
9485  
9490  
9495  
9500  
9505  
9510  
9515  
9520  
9525  
9530  
9535  
9540  
9545  
9550  
9555  
9560  
9565  
9570  
9575  
9580  
9585  
9590  
9595  
9600  
9605  
9610  
9615  
9620  
9625  
9630  
9635  
9640  
9645  
9650  
9655  
9660  
9665  
9670  
9675  
9680  
9685  
9690  
9695  
9700  
9705  
9710  
9715  
9720  
9725  
9730  
9735  
9740  
9745  
9750  
9755<br

Nowadays, satellites orbiting the Earth are employed to deliver telephone calls and television pictures around the world. The first to transmit live TV shows was Telstar, launched by the USA in 1962.

17  
18  
19

A. *Here are 5 sentences about the above passage. Put in a tick "✓" against the ones that are true and a cross "✗" against the ones that are false.*

- e.g. Read lines 1 - 2. Fire and smoke signals were used for communication since 1876. ✗
1. Read lines 6 - 8. The first effective means of long distant communication is the electric telegraph.
  2. Read lines 6 - 8. The electric telegraph was invented by William Cooke only.
  3. Read lines 11 - 16. Both Alexander Graham Bell and Mr. Watson are the inventors of the telephone.
  4. Read lines 17 - 19. Today, telephone calls and television pictures are transmitted around the world by satellites.
  5. Read lines 2 - 4. The printing press was used to print bibles.

B. *From the above passage find the suitable words which have similar meanings as the following.*

1. used \_\_\_\_\_
2. sent \_\_\_\_\_
3. pants \_\_\_\_\_
4. methods \_\_\_\_\_
5. sent into space \_\_\_\_\_

## Section D

Read the following passage and choose the best answer to each question.

Sharon was gazing at her calendar. Just four more days to go, the circus would be in town. Sharon could hardly wait. She loved the circus.

Sharon went to the circus show last year. Her dad went with her. She remembered the funny clown picking her out to help with his act. She held his balloons while the clown rode around on a bicycle and blew his kisses to the crowd. Everyone laughed and clapped.

Sharon hoped that her dad would take her to see the circus again. However, dad had lost his job three months ago and he was still trying to find another job. "Don't be selfish," she said to herself. "Poor Dad is worried. I should not make things harder for him. I must do something nice to make him happy!"

So she ran into the kitchen and made some delicious cookies. When dad rang the door bell, she cried out loudly, "Dad, I have a surprise for you!"

Dad was so happy seeing the cookies. "Sharon, I have a surprise for you too," he said. Then he took out two tickets to the circus. "I sold my golf clubs. I don't have time to play golf while looking for a job. We should have a good night out."

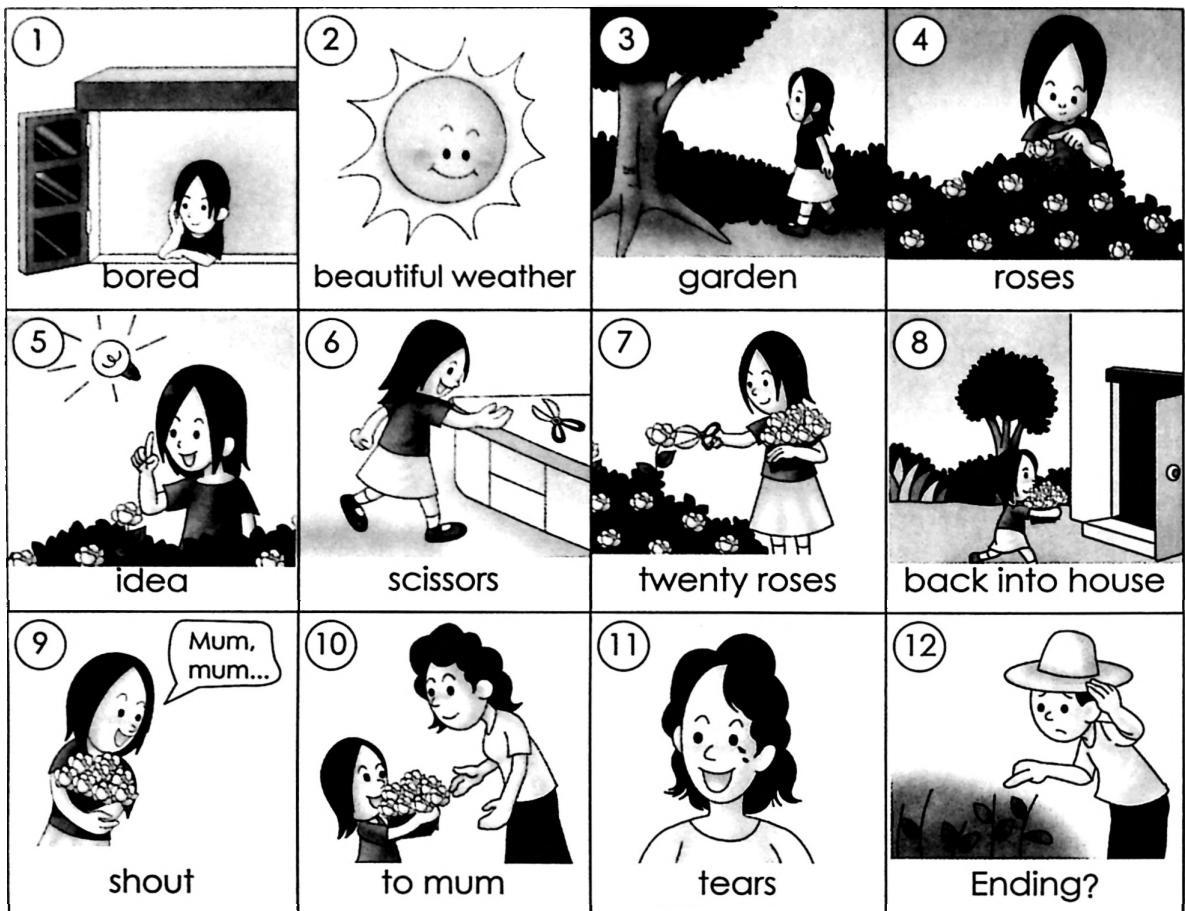


1. In line 2, Sharon felt excited because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A. her father was coming home from work
  - B. the circus was coming to town
  - C. she loved the circus
  - D. she went to the circus last year
  
2. How did Sharon help the circus clown last year?
  - A. She held his balloons.
  - B. She laughed and clapped.
  - C. She rode on a bicycle.
  - D. She blew kisses to the crowd.
  
3. Read lines 9 - 10. Why did Sharon think that she would not be able to see the circus this year?
  - A. She had been selfish.
  - B. She was there the year before.
  - C. Dad was worried.
  - D. Dad had lost his job and the family did not have much money to spare.
  
4. Why did Sharon want to give her dad a surprise?
  - A. She wanted to go to the circus.
  - B. She liked cookies.
  - C. She wanted to make things harder for dad.
  - D. She wanted to make dad happy.
  
5. How did Sharon's dad manage to buy the circus tickets?
  - A. He found a job.
  - B. He found some money.
  - C. He sold his golf clubs.
  - D. He had a job at night.

# TEST 3

## Section A

Study the following pictures and write a short story in about 100 words.



( But how would the gardener and other people feel? )

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Section B

Write in about 100 words (words provided are included) to describe Princess Diana's life according to the following information:

Name:	Diana Spencer	
Nickname:	Lady Di	
Date of Birth:	1 <sup>st</sup> July, 1961	
Place of Birth:	Norfolk— England	
Eye Colour:	Blue	
Hair Colour:	blonde	
Marriage:	Lady Diana married Prince Charles on 29 <sup>th</sup> July, 1981. * Diana and Prince Charles met in 1996. * When they got married, Diana was 20 and Prince Charles was 33. * Divorced: 28 <sup>th</sup> August, 1996 (Reason: Prince Charles had an affair with his ex-girlfriend, Camilla Parker Bowles.)	
Children:	Prince William—1982 Prince Harry—1984	
Achievement:	Charity work: help children, homeless people and AIDS sufferers	
Favourite Food:	pasta, salad & fruit	
Favourite Drink:	chilled dry white wine	
Hobbies:	Shopping, skiing	
Death:	30 <sup>th</sup> August, 1997 (car accident in Paris)	

You may start with the following sentence:

Diana Spencer was born on 1<sup>st</sup> July, 1961 in Norfolk, England.

## Section C

You are Patrick Chan, the Chairman of the English Club. You are going to design a poster for the English Week which will be held next month. The topic is "How to improve your English?"

Tanya Wong, your secretary, has collected some information and pictures for you.

Take a look at her notes and complete the poster on the next page.

Here is the note from Tanya:

Dear Patrick,

Below is the information for the poster:

- \* Read English books, newspapers and magazines



- \* Learn through internet



- \* Talk with English native speakers



- \* Take courses



- \* Visit English speaking countries, e.g. UK



Hope it helps.

Tanya

## The Poster:

# How to improve your English?

There are many ways to improve your standard of English.



Try to read as many English books, newspapers and magazines as you can find. We also recommend the English version of "Reader's Digest" which contains good short stories and articles.

1.



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2.



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3.



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4.



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Come and join us!

The "English Week" will be held from 1 June to 7 June in the Assembly Hall.

See you there!

(End of Test 2)

# ANSWERS

## EXERCISE 1

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. woodsman · tree   | 2. fell · sank |
| 3. young · deep      | 4. on · into   |
| 5. but · so          | 6. it · he     |
| 7. hardly · bitterly | 8. oh          |

## EXERCISE 2

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. ✓  | 2. ✓ | 3. ✗ |
| 4. ✓  | 5. ✗ | 6. ✗ |
| 7. ✗  | 8. ✓ | 9. ✓ |
| 10. ✗ |      |      |

## EXERCISE 3

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. Command     | 2. Statement |
| 3. Exclamation | 4. Question  |
| 5. Statement   |              |

## EXERCISE 4

1. I .... gave him a book as birthday present last year.
2. This news .... is important.
3. My father ... will take me to Japan this Summer.
4. The teacher ... asked them a difficult question.
5. The hunters ... killed a tiger this morning.

## EXERCISE 5

- |               |             |             |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. common     | 2. proper   | 3. proper   |
| 4. collective | 5. abstract | 6. material |
| 7. common     | 8. proper   | 9. abstract |
| 10. material  |             |             |

## EXERCISE 6

- |              |             |             |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. kisses    | 2. knives   | 3. mice     |
| 4. deer      | 5. babies   | 6. feet     |
| 7. mangoes   | 8. tigers   | 9. glasses  |
| 10. children | 11. replies | 12. monkeys |
| 13. bushes   | 14. studios |             |

## EXERCISE 7

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. ox       | 2. sheep       |
| 3. princess | 4. valley      |
| 5. dish     | 6. mathematics |
| 7. piano    | 8. watch       |
| 9. goose    | 10. pony       |
| 11. shelf   | 12. news       |
| 13. belief  | 14. loaf       |

## EXERCISE 8

- |               |              |            |
|---------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. seasons    | 2. meat      | 3. colours |
| 4. directions | 5. metals    |            |
| 6. vegetables | 7. insects   | 8. animals |
| 9. buildings  | 10. clothing |            |

## EXERCISE 9

- |          |           |             |
|----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. eye   | 2. water  | 3. juice    |
| 4. noise | 5. guests | 6. tourists |

- |        |           |
|--------|-----------|
| 7. oil | 8. cattle |
|--------|-----------|

## EXERCISE 10

- |         |             |         |
|---------|-------------|---------|
| 1. many | 2. a little | 3. much |
| 4. any  | 5. number   | 6. some |
| 7. any  | 8. many     |         |

## EXERCISE 11

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. wife husband    | 2. queen king    |
| 3. aunt uncle      | 4. niece nephew  |
| 5. mistress master | 6. mother father |
| 7. princess prince | 8. witch wizard  |
| 9. daughter son    | 10. duchess duke |

## EXERCISE 12

- |              |                  |               |
|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. aunt      | 2. heroine       | 3. girl-guide |
| 4. gander    | 5. lord          | 6. mare       |
| 7. actor     | 8. stewardess    | 9. girl       |
| 10. sir      | 11. fox          |               |
| 12. spinster | 13. headmistress |               |
| 14. bride    | 15. queen        |               |
| 16. father   | 17. milkmaid     |               |
| 18. tigress  |                  |               |

## EXERCISE 13

1. His nephew is an actor.
2. My son is going to be a bridegroom.
3. A vixen caught a cock and killed it.
4. The lioness is strong enough to kill a mare.
5. My grandfather was a great tailor.
6. The witch told the girl to take the lamp.
7. The shepherdess feeds a she-goat.
8. The headmaster told the girl-guides not to be naughty.

## EXERCISE 14

1. The babies' boots.
2. The students' books.
3. The men's shirts.
4. The girls' bags.
5. The children's blankets.
6. The cattle's feet.
7. The witches' knives.
8. The scouts' badges.

## EXERCISE 15

1. You have to put the students' attendance sheets on the table.
2. There are lots of bears' dens in the jungle.
3. The police found some prisoners' uniforms under the bed.
4. Students are not allowed to enter the Principal's Office.
5. Tom has started preparing for next year's examinations.
6. Mr. Yip's car is clean.

**EXERCISE 16**

11. • ( correct sentence )  
 22. Mr. Naji practices yoga on the top of the hill every morning.  
 33. I can't stop sneezing because the scent of the perfume is too strong.  
 44. We won't skip Moday's class because it's taught by Mr. Smith.  
 55. Step on the brake of the car when you are going downhill.  
 66. • ( correct sentence )

**EXERCISE 17**

1. him 2. me 3. she  
 4. they 5. We 6. I her  
 7. they, us 8. me 9. him  
 10. she

**EXERCISE 18**

1. he 2. them 3. me  
 4. he 5. we

**EXERCISE 19**

1. yours 2. his 3. theirs hers  
 4. mine 5. ours

**EXERCISE 20**

1. ourselves 2. yourselves  
 3. itself 4. myself  
 5. himself 6. ourselves  
 7. herself 8. myself  
 9. oneself 10. themselves

**EXERCISE 21**

1. himself 2. themselves  
 3. myself 4. herself  
 5. ourselves

**EXERCISE 22**

1. This that 2. This 3. those  
 4. These 5. Those 6. That

**EXERCISE 23**

1. Which 2. What 3. Who  
 4. Whose 5. Whom 6. Who

**EXERCISE 24**

1. which/that 2. who 3. whose  
 4. which 5. whom 6. whom  
 7. Who 8. which  
 9. which/that 10. whose

**EXERCISE 25**

1. A 2. B 3. B  
 4. B 5. B 6. A  
 7. D 8. A 9. B  
 10. B

**EXERCISE 26**

1. a 2. an 3. an  
 4. a 5. An a 6. a  
 7. an a 8. a 9. an  
 10. an

**EXERCISE 27**

1. The 2. an a 3. a  
 4. a a 5. The the 6. a the the  
 7. the 8. The the 9. an the  
 10. A 11. a 12. the the  
 13. An 14. a 15. The a  
 16. the the 17. the 18. an  
 19. a 20. an

**EXERCISE 28**

1. D 2. D 3. A  
 4. D 5. B 6. C  
 7. A 8. C

**EXERCISE 29**

1. A 2. F 3. D  
 4. C 5. B 6. E  
 7. D 8. F 9. E  
 10. A

**EXERCISE 30**

1. The woman has four sons.  
 2. The wind blows from the North.  
 3. She has lost her books.  
 4. They were in a place.  
 5. He has not books in his bag.  
 6. The lorry is carrying a load.  
 7. persons could complete the Sudoku contest.  
 8. The boat sails down the river.

**EXERCISE 31**

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. worse            | the worst            |
| 2. wider            | the widest           |
| 3. angrier          | the angriest         |
| 4. wetter           | the wettest          |
| 5. more comfortable | the most comfortable |
| 6. younger          | the youngest         |
| 7. less             | the least            |
| 8. noisier          | the noisiest         |
| 9. more polite      | the most polite      |
| 10. cheaper         | the cheaper          |

**EXERCISE 32**

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. worst         | 2. stronger       |
| 3. prettier      | 4. sharper        |
| 5. better        | 6. more important |
| 7. more          | 8. best           |
| 9. more exciting | 10. hottest       |

**EXERCISE 33**

1. your      2. our      5. their

3. their

5. was dying      6. get  
 7. will go      8. belongs  
 9. have not seen      10. shine  
 11. is      12. will be  
 13. will have joined      14. met / was going  
 15. bark

**EXERCISE 34**

1. going      went      gone  
 2. crying      cried      cried  
 3. riding      rode      ridden  
 4. shooting      shot      shot  
 5. shaking      shook      shaken  
 6. doing      did      done  
 7. carrying      carried      carried  
 8. speaking      spoke      spoken  
 9. tying      tied      tied  
 10. bringing      brought      brought  
 11. flowing      flowed      flowed  
 12. slipping      slipped      slipped  
 13. breathing      breathed      breathed  
 14. hiding      hid      hidden  
 15. spreading      spread      spread  
 16. falling      fell      fallen  
 17. hopping      hopped      hopped  
 18. weeping      wept      wept  
 19. shining      shone      shone  
 20. fighting      fought      fought  
 21. paying      paid      paid  
 22. awaking      awoke      awoke  
 23. biting      bit      bitten  
 24. hurting      hurt      hurt  
 25. stopping      stopped      stopped  
 26. writing      wrote      written  
 27. drinking      drank      drunk  
 28. swearing      swore      sworn  
 29. freezing      froze      frozen  
 30. seeing      saw      seen

**EXERCISE 35**

1. B      2. C      3. D  
 4. D      5. A      6. A  
 7. C      8. A      9. A  
 10. A

**EXERCISE 36**

1. Does      2. are      3. Do  
 4. does      5. has      6. am  
 7. Has      8. are

**EXERCISE 37**

1. go      2. had gone  
 3. has stopped      4. will start  
 5. was crossing      6. lost  
 7. have not seen      8. is dying  
 9. is climbing      10. digs

**EXERCISE 38**

1. has      2. am listening  
 3. has written      4. finished

**EXERCISE 39**

1. A      2. B      3. B  
 4. D      5. B      6. B  
 7. D      8. B      9. A  
 10. B

**EXERCISE 40**

1. leading      2. belonged  
 3. riding      4. did not know  
 5. was      6. took  
 7. carried      8. was  
 9. threw      10. Do not throw

**EXERCISE 41**

1. nearly      2. hard      3. shortly  
 4. dully      5. badly      6. naturally  
 7. easily      8. quickly      9. gently  
 10. truly      11. nicely      12. early  
 13. cruelly      14. wholly      15. bodily  
 16. fast      17. gladly      18. heavily  
 19. late / lately      20. well      21. long  
 22. much

**EXERCISE 42**

1. aloud      2. past      3. across  
 4. unkindly      5. again and again  
 6. soundly      7. carelessly      8. alone  
 9. one by one      10. well      11. along  
 12. twice      13. happily      14. neatly  
 15. quarterly

**EXERCISE 43**

1. later      the latest / the last  
 2. more soundly      the most soundly  
 3. more safely      the most safely  
 4. nearer      the nearest  
 5. farther      the farthest  
 6. faster      the fastest  
 7. sooner      the soonest  
 8. worse      the worst  
 9. more wisely      the most wisely  
 10. better      the best  
 11. more      the most  
 12. more quickly      the most quickly  
 13. harder      the hardest  
 14. less      the least  
 15. more carefully      the most carefully

**EXERCISE 44**

1. hard      2. never      3. never  
 4. pretty      5. really      6. quickly  
 7. suddenly      8. never      9. often  
 10. always      11. enough  
 12. carelessly      13. too  
 14. sometimes      15. skillfully  
 16. so      17. rather  
 18. soon      19. quite      20. swiftly

**EXERCISE 45**

1. B      2. C      3. B  
 4. B      5. C      6. B  
 7. C      8. D

**EXERCISE 46**

1. D      2. B      3. D  
 4. A      5. A      6. B  
 7. B      8. A      9. A  
 10. A

**EXERCISE 47**

1. (a) at      (b) for      (c) of  
 2. (a) to      (b) with      (c) for  
 3. (a) at      (b) into      (c) for  
 (d) after  
 4. (a) of      (b) by      (c) in  
 (d) from  
 5. (a) into      (b) among      (c) between  
 6. (a) on      (b) in      (c) at

**EXERCISE 48**

1. D      2. A      3. B  
 4. D      5. D      6. B  
 7. D      8. B      9. B  
 10. A

**EXERCISE 49**

1. by      2. in      3. at  
 4. without      5. of      6. at  
 7. for      8. with      9. across  
 10. of

**EXERCISE 50**

1. A      2. A      3. D  
 4. C      5. B      6. A

**EXERCISE 51**

1. to      2. on      3. of  
 4. for      5. from      6. for  
 7. from      8. on      9. from  
 10. of

**EXERCISE 52**

1. because      2. and      3. after  
 4. until      5. but      6. for  
 7. because      8. Before      9. until  
 10. since

**EXERCISE 53**

1. B      2. A      3. A  
 4. D      5. C      6. A  
 7. C      8. B

**EXERCISE 54**

- B. 10      C. 1      D. 9  
 E. 2      F. 8      G. 3  
 H. 7      I. 4      J. 6

**EXERCISE 55**

1. while      2. or      3. because  
 4. and      5. or      6. than  
 7. if

**EXERCISE 56**

1. Ah      2. Hello  
 3. How interesting  
 4. Well done  
 5. Hush      6. Bravo / Hurrah  
 7. Oh      8. Hurrah / Hurray  
 9. Alas      10. What

**EXERCISE 57**

1. You cannot go there.  
 2. My aunt does not visit me every week.  
 3. He is not called Charles by his friends.  
 4. He does not go to school every day.  
 5. Tom and Mary are not singing.  
 6. These flowers do not smell sweet.  
 7. They were not allowed to go to the library.  
 8. The old man did not tell the truth.  
 9. The King was not welcome by his people.  
 10. She will not have a holiday next month.  
 11. The baby does not cry every morning.  
 12. The soldiers did not fight against their enemies.  
 13. We do not know anybody in this school.  
 14. The sportsmen do not run very fast.  
 15. His umbrella has not been stolen.

**EXERCISE 58**

1. The boy caught some fish.  
 2. She likes swimming.  
 3. My sister is singing a song.  
 4. They have won the game.  
 5. They work in the cafe.  
 6. The coach will leave at noon.  
 7. Our teacher taught us English yesterday.  
 8. We must use the computer.  
 9. He can make that model.  
 10. You are requested to read aloud.  
 11. The prisoner was killed by someone.  
 12. He asked somebody to stay.  
 13. Mary ought to answer my question.

14. She gives him something to do.  
15. Children like toys.

#### EXERCISE 59

1. Is he afraid of his teacher?
2. Do we obey our parents?
3. Will the baby be able to walk?
4. Does her cat catch the mouse?
5. Do you need anybody's help?
6. Is this tiger a very fierce animal?
7. Must I write any e-mails today?
8. Will they listen to their teacher?
9. Did he pay twenty dollars for the DVD?
10. Have we done our homework?
11. Are the workers building a house?
12. Have I ever done anything wrong?

#### EXERCISE 60

1. have you heard of ?
2. letter is this?
3. old was he?
4. did he run?
5. you know why he left us?
6. was his income per month?
7. were they grateful to him?
8. do you go to the Central Library?
9. boys are there in the room?
10. read Tom's book yesterday?
11. did you speak to this morning?
12. pencil is the longest?
13. does Peter live?
14. has he been told?
15. was he absent?

#### EXERCISE 61

1. When
2. Where
3. How many
4. How
5. Which
6. Why
7. Who
8. Whose
9. whom
10. What

#### EXERCISE 62

1. Who is the tallest boy in the class?
2. How do you go to school?
3. How much does this book cost?
4. How old are you?
5. How much money has he got?
6. How many times has he been there?
7. How often does Peter go to visit his uncle?
8. Whose pretty dress is this?
9. Whom is he playing with?
10. How often do you take vitamins a day?

#### EXERCISE 63

1. isn't she?
2. weren't they?
3. doesn't she?
4. he isn't.

5. it is .
6. do you?
7. won't he?
8. was it?
9. I do.
10. it won't.
11. isn't she?
12. will he?
13. does he?
14. she has.
15. oughtn't we?

#### EXERCISE 64

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. D |
| 4. B | 5. A | 6. B |
| 7. B |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 65

1. was glad to meet his uncle then.
2. were going to have a picnic that weekend.
3. to go close to her.
4. had lost his uniform the day before.
5. should be nine years old the next day.
6. washed her clothes before she went to bed.
7. had nothing to eat those few days.
8. the moon moves round the earth.
9. was cleaning the blackboard then.
10. he may put on his new shirt.

#### EXERCISE 66

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. B  | 2. D | 3. A |
| 4. B  | 5. D | 6. D |
| 7. D  | 8. D | 9. A |
| 10. C |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 67

1. if he liked to play with her.
2. why I got up so early.
3. if he could clean the table.
4. where he had put his umbrella.
5. whether he might have a pair of new shoes.
6. what time it was then.
7. whether he had finished his work.
8. where she was going the next morning.
9. whether he would go or not.
10. if he could borrow my book.

#### EXERCISE 68

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. A  | 2. B | 3. C |
| 4. D  | 5. D | 6. A |
| 7. A  | 8. C | 9. B |
| 10. D |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 69

1. to stand up.
2. to let her go.
3. to go to his office.
4. to go away.
5. to give him his knife.

66. to go there.
77. not to clean the blackboard.
88. told me to go in.
99. begged me to give him a dollar.
110. told Peter to open all the windows.

#### EXERCISE 70

11. "Where can I find a taxi?"
22. "Are you happy during your holiday?"
33. "Don't tear my book."
44. "I have lost my purse."
55. "When will you leave?"
66. "How is your father?"
77. "What have you done to my laptop?"
88. "Hurrah! Our team have won the game!"
99. "I am cooking in the kitchen now."
110. "Are you thirsty, Mary?"

#### EXERCISE 71

1. tested by him yesterday.
22. run 24 hours a day.
33. was arrested.
4. was broken by the burglar.
55. was built by them.
66. were not shut by you.
77. is enjoyed by all the students.
88. was taken to the party by them.
99. are distributed to the class by the class monitor.
10. were grown by these farmers.

#### EXERCISE 72

1. being carried by the nurses.
2. is being baked.
3. being cleaned.
4. are being delivered to us.
5. was being fixed by the children.
6. is being written by Judy.
7. was being hit cruelly by the man.
8. are being sown.
9. is being told by my father.
10. was being fixed.

#### EXERCISE 73

1. been kept by the boy.
2. been helped by me.
3. been done by her.
4. have been bought by them.
5. has been broken by him.
6. has been boiled by you.
7. has been drawn by Peter.
8. The door has been shut by him.
9. He has been shown a picture by us. / A picture has been shown to him by us.
10. The honest carpenter was given a golden axe by the fairy.

#### EXERCISE 74

1. been found by Tom.
2. She had been given a bunch of roses by me.
3. The clothes had been washed by the helper.
4. Their work had been done.
5. Your ankle had been broken.

#### EXERCISE 75

1. be got by him.
2. be made by me.
3. will be bought by my mom.
4. will be washed by the nurse.
5. will be lent a book by us.
6. will be bitten by the dog.
7. will be driven by me.
8. shall be helped by Peter.
9. The repair will be finished by the workman.
10. A nest will be built by the swallow.

#### EXERCISE 76

1. been found?
2. a foolish thing done?
3. broken by him?
4. You are requested to stop the taxi.
5. What can be done by him?
6. By whom is the baby taken care of ?
7. What will be found by them?
8. Are mobile phones sold by you?
9. You are requested to turn on the fan.
10. Is the stock being checked by this sales assistant?

#### EXERCISE 77

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. A  | 2. B | 3. D |
| 4. A  | 5. B | 6. D |
| 7. A  | 8. B | 9. C |
| 10. B |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 78

1. to shut your mouth.
2. allow us to come.
3. have been asked by him.
4. is being opened by him.
5. bit the boy.
6. is caught by the police officer.
7. will be taken by her?
8. was taken to the party by his friends.
9. were these sums done by them?
10. A thief has stolen his watch.
11. Tom was helping the boys.
12. How can your sister be met (by me)?

#### EXERCISE 79

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. pride | 2. anger | 3. death |
|----------|----------|----------|

- |              |               |              |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 4. centre    | 5. business   | 6. warmth    |
| 7. quickness | 8. width      | 9. beauty    |
| 10. height   | 11. freedom   | 12. pleasure |
| 13. comfort  | 14. coolness  |              |
| 15. bravery  | 16. life      |              |
| 17. ability  | 18. agreement |              |
| 19. glory    | 20. cheapness |              |

#### EXERCISE 80

- |               |                            |             |
|---------------|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1. bright     | 2. useful                  |             |
| 3. courageous | 4. weighty                 |             |
| 5. different  | 6. glad                    | 7. easy     |
| 8. favourable | 9. strong                  | 10. free    |
| 11. weak      | 12. continual / continuous |             |
| 13. wide      | 14. divisible              | 15. helpful |
| 16. beautiful | 17. introductory           | 18. bloody  |
| 19. fresh     | 20. forgetful              |             |

#### EXERCISE 81

- |              |                 |              |
|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. well      | 2. usefully     | 3. truly     |
| 4. noisily   | 5. yearly       | 6. fast      |
| 7. hungrily  | 8. enjoyably    | 9. fully     |
| 10. bloodily | 11. colourfully | 12. ably     |
| 13. easily   | 14. bravely     | 15. clearly  |
| 16. cruelly  | 17. foolishly   | 18. cloudily |
| 19. funnily  | 20. dully       |              |

#### EXERCISE 82

- |             |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. endanger | 2. strengthen | 3. care     |
| 4. sadden   | 5. widen      | 6. live     |
| 7. succeed  | 8. joke       | 9. thicken  |
| 10. give    | 11. invent    | 12. gladden |
| 13. heal    | 14. imitate   | 15. glorify |
| 16. please  | 17. introduce | 18. enrich  |
| 19. divide  | 20. enlarge   |             |

#### EXERCISE 83

- |               |                |  |
|---------------|----------------|--|
| 1. tired      | 2. strength    |  |
| 3. obedient   | 4. rainy       |  |
| 5. anger      | 6. beautifully |  |
| 7. different  | 8. attention   |  |
| 9. sight      | 10. badly      |  |
| 11. care      | 12. foolishly  |  |
| 13. saved     | 14. difficulty |  |
| 15. dangerous |                |  |

#### EXERCISE 84

- |             |           |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. remember | 2. dark   | 3. poor   |
| 4. enemy    | 5. top    | 6. clever |
| 7. shallow  | 8. strong | 9. defend |
| 10. unknown |           |           |

#### EXERCISE 85

- |           |                |              |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. strong | 2. friendly    | 3. tasteless |
| 4. untrue | 5. sour/bitter | 6. tall      |
| 7. light  | 8. hardworking |              |
| 9. easy   | 10. ugly       |              |

#### EXERCISE 86

- |        |        |       |
|--------|--------|-------|
| 1. 6   | 2. 7   | 3. 9  |
| 4. 1   | 5. 4   | 6. 8  |
| 7. 10  | 8. 13  | 9. 5  |
| 10. 12 | 11. 15 | 12. 3 |
| 13. 14 | 14. 11 | 15. 2 |

#### EXERCISE 87

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. B  | 2. A | 3. D |
| 4. C  | 5. D | 6. D |
| 7. D  | 8. D | 9. D |
| 10. B |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 88

##### List A

1. begin
2. unkind
3. happy
4. team
5. quiet
6. believe
7. yearly
8. hole
9. habit
10. cautious

- |   |   |             |
|---|---|-------------|
| • | • | A. cruel    |
| • | • | B. glad     |
| • | • | C. start    |
| • | • | D. crew     |
| • | • | E. silent   |
| • | • | F. annually |
| • | • | G. gap      |
| • | • | H. custom   |
| • | • | I. careful  |
| • | • | J. trust    |

##### List B

#### EXERCISE 89

- |      |       |      |
|------|-------|------|
| A. 2 | B. 5  | C. 6 |
| D. 1 | E. 7  | F. 3 |
| G. 8 | H. 10 | I. 4 |
| J. 9 |       |      |

#### EXERCISE 90

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. B  | 2. B | 3. A |
| 4. A  | 5. C | 6. D |
| 7. A  | 8. C | 9. B |
| 10. B |      |      |

#### EXERCISE 91

1. ( " ) ( ? ) ( " )
2. ( " ) ( ? ) ( " ) ( ' )
3. ( , ) ( , ) ( . )
4. ( , ) ( , )
5. ( , ) ( . ) ( , ) ( ? )
6. ( , ) ( ? )
7. ( . ) ( ' ) ( , )
8. ( ! ) ( , )
9. ( , ) ( ? )
10. ( ' ) ( ? )
11. ( ! ) ( ? )
12. ( ' ) ( , ) ( " )
13. ( . ) ( ? ) ( . )
14. ( ! ) ( . ) ( . )
15. ( ? ) ( ' )

**EXERCISE 92**

11. She sits in front of the mirror.
22. Miss Wong has just told Jack a funny story.
33. I'm sure it'll look very nice when I finish.
44. How much is it?
55. Mr. Chan said, "Let's go there now. Shall we take a bus?"
66. What kind of clothes do you want, cotton or silk?
77. I am going to see Uncle George next week.
88. Thank you, I'm glad I can go.
99. I told Mr. Brown to go home quickly.
10. We go to the church at 9.00 a.m. every Sunday.
11. Oh! Look at that dress. What a mix of colours it has!
12. Oh! My God! I have told you not to do it like that.
13. I go to see Dr. Ng because I'm not feeling well.
14. The man asked Alice, "Where do you live?"
15. Hush! Don't make any noise.
16. Whom did he see yesterday?
17. Tom, will you please pass me that cup?
18. He received a letter from his friend in the U.S.A.
19. There are many animals in the zoo: lions, tigers, elephants, zebras and wolves.
20. Mr. Chan, Mr. Lam, Mr. Ng and Mr. Ho are coming to my house tonight.

**EXERCISE 93**

Fred: Look! Here's a cave. Let's go in.

Jack: It's very dark inside.

Fred: Never mind. I've a torch.

Jack: You go in first. I'll follow you.

**EXERCISE 94**

Pauly has a parrot. She calls him Polly. Polly has a hard, sharp beak. His feathers are green and blue and red in colours. They are very soft. Polly's wings are weak so he cannot fly, but he can climb. Pauly thinks he is very beautiful.

**EXERCISE 95**

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. c arpenter  | 2. l ibrary |
| 3. r eservoir  | 4. p ork    |
| 5. b reakfast  | 6. k itchen |
| 7. d ictionary | 8. c amel   |
| 9. m osquito   | 10. b ridge |

**EXERCISE 96**

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A |
| 4. A | 5. D | 6. C |

7. C

10. C

8. B

9. C

**EXERCISE 97**

- |              |            |            |
|--------------|------------|------------|
| 1. florist   | 2. nest    | 3. dentist |
| 4. rickshaw  | 5. captain | 6. palace  |
| 7. compass   | 8. author  | 9. sail    |
| 10. lavatory |            |            |

**EXERCISE 98**

- |               |            |            |
|---------------|------------|------------|
| 1. wearing    | 2. decided | 3. topic   |
| 4. near       | 5. stale   | 6. climbed |
| 7. tomorrow   | 8. twice   | 9. exit    |
| 10. fortnight |            |            |

**EXERCISE 99**

- |                |              |              |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. soon        | 2. plenty of | 3. visited   |
| 4. disappeared | 5. weekly    |              |
| 6. immediately | 7. cancelled |              |
| 8. return      | 9. called in | 10. suddenly |

**EXERCISE 100**

- |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| A. 1. more | 2. worse   | 3. present |
| 4. Spring  | 5. noon    |            |
| B. 1. pen  | 2. cabbage | 3. carpark |
| 4. cotton  | 5. sleep   |            |

**EXERCISE 101**

- |              |            |           |
|--------------|------------|-----------|
| A. 1. liner  | 2. honey   | 3. carrot |
| 4. tiger     | 5. palace  |           |
| 2. 1. nose   | chin       |           |
| 2. kilometer | centimeter |           |
| 3. beetle    | cockroach  |           |
| 4. talk      | speak      |           |
| 5. table     | chair      |           |

**EXERCISE 102**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| A. 1. VISITOR   | 2. RELATIVE   |
| 3. AUDIENCE     | 4. SOLDIER    |
| 5. PRINCESS     | 6. AUTHOR     |
| 7. CYCLIST      | 8. PEDESTRIAN |
| 9. NEIGHBOUR    |               |
| 10. THERMOMETER |               |

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| B. 1. lind | 2. rippled |
| 3. ame     | 4. umb     |
| 5. eaf     | 6. unatic  |

**EXERCISE 103**

- |             |              |           |
|-------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. scout    | 2. pool      | 3. fare   |
| 4. year     | 5. leave     | 6. office |
| 7. crossing | 8. concourse | 9. guide  |
| 10. signal  |              |           |

**EXERCISE 104**

- |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. doesn't | 2. She'll  | 3. It's    |
| 4. He's    | 5. can't   | 6. Don't   |
| 7. I'm     | 8. haven't | 9. Where's |
| 10. We're  |            |            |

**EXERCISE 105**

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. C  | 2. A | 3. I |
| 4. G  | 5. L | 6. B |
| 7. D  | 8. K | 9. E |
| 10. H |      |      |

- |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 4. Z   | 5. Z   | 6. IZ  |
| 7. S   | 8. Z   | 9. Z   |
| 10. IZ | 11. T  | 12. ID |
| 13. D  | 14. ID | 15. ID |
| 16. T  | 17. D  | 18. T  |
| 19. D  | 20. D  |        |

**EXERCISE 106**

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. A  | 2. D | 3. A |
| 4. D  | 5. D | 6. B |
| 7. D  | 8. B | 9. D |
| 10. B |      |      |

- EXERCISE 114**
- absent yesterday.
  - is taller than Peter.
  - he was going home then.
  - worse than your sister's.
  - being chased by the hunter.
  - is rich, he is still greedy.
  - go away, I shall send for a policeman.
  - the hospital daily.
  - for us to do to help him.
  - and Jane are sitting.

**EXERCISE 107**

- |          |          |            |
|----------|----------|------------|
| 1. born  | 2. diary | 3. accept  |
| 4. fares | 5. sow   | 6. pray    |
| 7. hear  | 8. site  | 9. weather |
| 10. week |          |            |

**EXERCISE 115**

- tea to coffee.
- work hard, your teacher will punish you.
- car is this?
- a gold watch by them.
- fond of reading magazines.
- less honest than my brother.
- he would go the next day.
- is being drawn by a horse.
- for two hours, my brother took a rest.
- did not know what to do.

**EXERCISE 108**

- |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. D   | 2. T   | 3. ID  |
| 4. T   | 5. T   |        |
| 6. D   | 7. D   | 8. ID  |
| 9. T   | 10. T  |        |
| 11. T  | 12. T  | 13. ID |
| 14. ID | 15. ID |        |
| 16. T  | 17. D  | 18. D  |
| 19. D  | 20. ID |        |

**EXERCISE 116**

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. B  | 2. C | 3. C |
| 4. D  | 5. D | 6. D |
| 7. B  | 8. A | 9. B |
| 10. D |      |      |

**EXERCISE 109**

- |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. S   | 2. IZ  | 3. Z   |
| 4. S   | 5. S   |        |
| 6. Z   | 7. Z   | 8. IZ  |
| 9. Z   | 10. Z  |        |
| 11. S  | 12. S  | 13. IZ |
| 14. IZ | 15. S  |        |
| 16. IZ | 17. IZ | 18. S  |
| 19. IZ | 20. S  |        |

**EXERCISE 117**

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. B  | 2. A | 3. A |
| 4. C  | 5. A | 6. B |
| 7. C  | 8. D | 9. B |
| 10. B |      |      |

**EXERCISE 110**

- |            |         |         |
|------------|---------|---------|
| 1. tight   | 2. sick | 3. toys |
| 4. nice    | 5. wing | 6. wild |
| 7. lie     | 8. life | 9. make |
| 10. taught |         |         |

- EXERCISE 118**
- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. C |
| 4. C | 5. D |      |

**EXERCISE 111**

- |           |         |          |
|-----------|---------|----------|
| 1. put    | 2. sour | 3. low   |
| 4. brine  | 5. kite | 6. shoot |
| 7. quiet  | 8. sink | 9. fate  |
| 10. can't |         |          |

**EXERCISE 119**

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. A | 3. B |
| 4. D | 5. D |      |

**EXERCISE 112**

- |             |           |         |
|-------------|-----------|---------|
| 1. sew      | 2. dad    | 3. none |
| 4. X        | 5. X      | 6. goat |
| 7. bear     | 8. weight | 9. X    |
| 10. through |           |         |

**EXERCISE 120**

- |                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|
| (1) 1. were rowing | 2. lady      |
| 3. overturned      | 4. splashing |
| 5. drowning        | 6. swam      |
| 7. ashore          | 8. crowd     |

**EXERCISE 113**

- |      |       |      |
|------|-------|------|
| 1. Z | 2. IZ | 3. S |
|------|-------|------|

- |       |
|-------|
| (2) C |
|-------|

## EXERCISE 121

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. exercise (line1)      | 2. right (line12)     |
| 3. balanced (line2)      | 4. overweight (line3) |
| 5. heart disease (line5) | 6. diabetes (line5)   |
| 7. television (line5)    | 8. computer (line6)   |
| 9. active (line7)        | 10. walk (line8)      |

## EXERCISE 122

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1. | 2. ✓ | 3. ✓ |
| 4. | 5.   | 6. ✓ |

## EXERCISE 123

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 2. F  | 3. A  | 4. B  |
| 5. E  | 6. I  | 7. K  |
| 8. G  | 9. J  | 10. L |
| 11. C | 12. H |       |

## EXERCISE 124

1. It is to tell people a detective toy kit is on sale for one week only.
2. You can buy it at the Active Kids Store at Pacific Department Store.
3. The set of walkie-talkie is the most expensive.
4. The notepad and a detective badge and the chain with two locks and keys are of the same price.
5. The cheapest way to buy the whole kit is to buy the entire set as early as possible because there are only 50 kits available.

## EXERCISE 125

- (A) 1. A      2. D

- (B) 1. Groups of five or more.  
2. Swimming, spa, BBQ, tennis.  
3. I could speak to the on-site manager.  
4. The receptionist at Seaside Inn.

## EXERCISE 126

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. 1 | 2. 5 | 3. 2 |
| 4. 6 | 5. 4 | 6. 3 |

## TEST 1

### SECTION A

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C  | 2. B  | 3. C  |
| 4. C  | 5. B  | 6. C  |
| 7. D  | 8. A  | 9. D  |
| 10. B | 11. C | 12. C |
| 13. A | 14. A | 15. A |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. B |
| 19. C | 20. C |       |

### SECTION B

- PART 1*
- |         |           |            |
|---------|-----------|------------|
| 1. were | 2. killed | 3. protect |
|---------|-----------|------------|

- |       |             |             |
|-------|-------------|-------------|
| 4. up | 5. whenever | 6. consider |
|-------|-------------|-------------|

### PART 2

- |          |        |       |
|----------|--------|-------|
| 1. to    | 2. at  | 3. in |
| 4. about | 5. for | 6. on |
| 7. with  | 8. off |       |

### PART 3

1. Would you like to go out this weekend?
2. Could you turn off the fan for me, please?
3. Could you tell me the time now?
4. Would you mind repeating that again?
5. Would all of you stay behind after the lesson please?

## SECTION C

### PART 1

- A. "Peter," he whispered. "Can you get that book for me, please?"  
"This one?" asked Peter.  
"Yes, that's the one. Thank you, Peter."
- B. 1) 1. D      2. B      3. A      4. C  
2) 1. A      2. C      3. B      4. D  
3) 1. B      2. E      3. A      4. D  
5. C      6. F

### PART 2

1. "We like sweets very much."
2. told John to open the door.
3. them was very difficult.
4. owns this house?
5. work hard.
6. had a cold.
7. come to tea with me today?
8. have you left your rain coat?

### PART 3

- A. 1. x      2. x      3. ✓  
4. ✓      5. x
- B. 1. goals (line3)      2. depends (line4)  
3. improve (line3)      4. expanded (line7)  
5. support (line3)

## SECTION D

- |              |                  |             |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. yesterday | 2. least         | 3. training |
| 4. three     | 5. entertainment |             |
| 6. most      | 7. used          | 8. before   |

## TEST 2

### SECTION A

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A  | 2. B  | 3. C  |
| 4. A  | 5. A  | 6. B  |
| 7. B  | 8. D  | 9. C  |
| 10. C | 11. A | 12. B |
| 13. D | 14. D | 15. B |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. C |
| 19. A | 20. C |       |

## SECTION B

### PART 1

- A. 1. writer 2. born 3. never  
4. located 5. wearing 6. on  
B. 1. wealthy (line 4)  
2. writer (line 1)  
3. governess (line 7)  
4. countryside (line 6)  
5. only (line 3)

### PART 2

1. comes 2. Congratulations  
3. of 4. Does  
5. on 6. be  
7. buildings 8. decreases  
9. to 10. don't

## SECTION C

### PART 1

"What is the matter?" the mother asked.  
"I drank some of that," said the girl, "and I feel sick. I thought it was a nice soup, but it tasted like soap."  
"Oh, dear!" exclaimed the mother.

### PART 2

- a. obediently b. dangerous c. fattest  
d. secondary e. sale

### PART 3

1. pier 2. stop 3. flame  
4. signal 5. crossing 6. car  
7. animal

### PART 4

1. London is well known for having the cold and wet weather.
2. In Nepal, many people live in the mountains.
3. It's getting very hot and humid. Can you switch on the air-conditioner?
4. It takes no time to fall in love, but it takes you the years to know what love is.
5. Susan has been living in the USA for 10 years.

### PART 5

1. Can you suggest me the ways to build a popular blog?
2. An Air pollution is getting very serious in Hong Kong as a result of the rapid development in Guangdong province.
3. Jason loves a girl with a long hair.
4. To find out more information, please take a look at the website.

5. There is a big gap between the rich and the poor in Hong Kong.

### PART 6

- A. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗  
4. ✗ 5. ✓  
B. 1. employed (line 9)  
2. transmitted (line 15)  
3. trousers (line 14)  
4. means (line 7)  
5. launched (line 19)

## SECTION D

1. B 2. A 3. D  
4. D 5. C

## TEST 3

SECTION A ✗

SECTION B ✗

SECTION C ✗



版權所有本書內容不得  
用任何方式轉載或翻印

## 精編英文科複習指導 REVISED EDITION 修訂版

---

編輯兼者：國光出版社

---

總發行：國光文化服務社有限公司  
學校訂購部

地址：九龍油塘高輝道17號A2座10字樓16室

圖文傳真：2338 5758

電話：2338 2466 2338 2476

電子郵件：kkcultural@hotmail.com

---

承印者：良師出版社（印刷部）  
九龍油塘高輝道17號A2座10字樓16室  
TEL：2336 0212 FAX：2338 5758

---

網頁：[www.kkcultural.wixsite.com/home](http://www.kkcultural.wixsite.com/home) 2023

ISBN 962-268-201-4

9 789622 682016

姓名 \_\_\_\_\_

班別 \_\_\_\_\_